


# CONNECT Plus







*By a group of specialists*

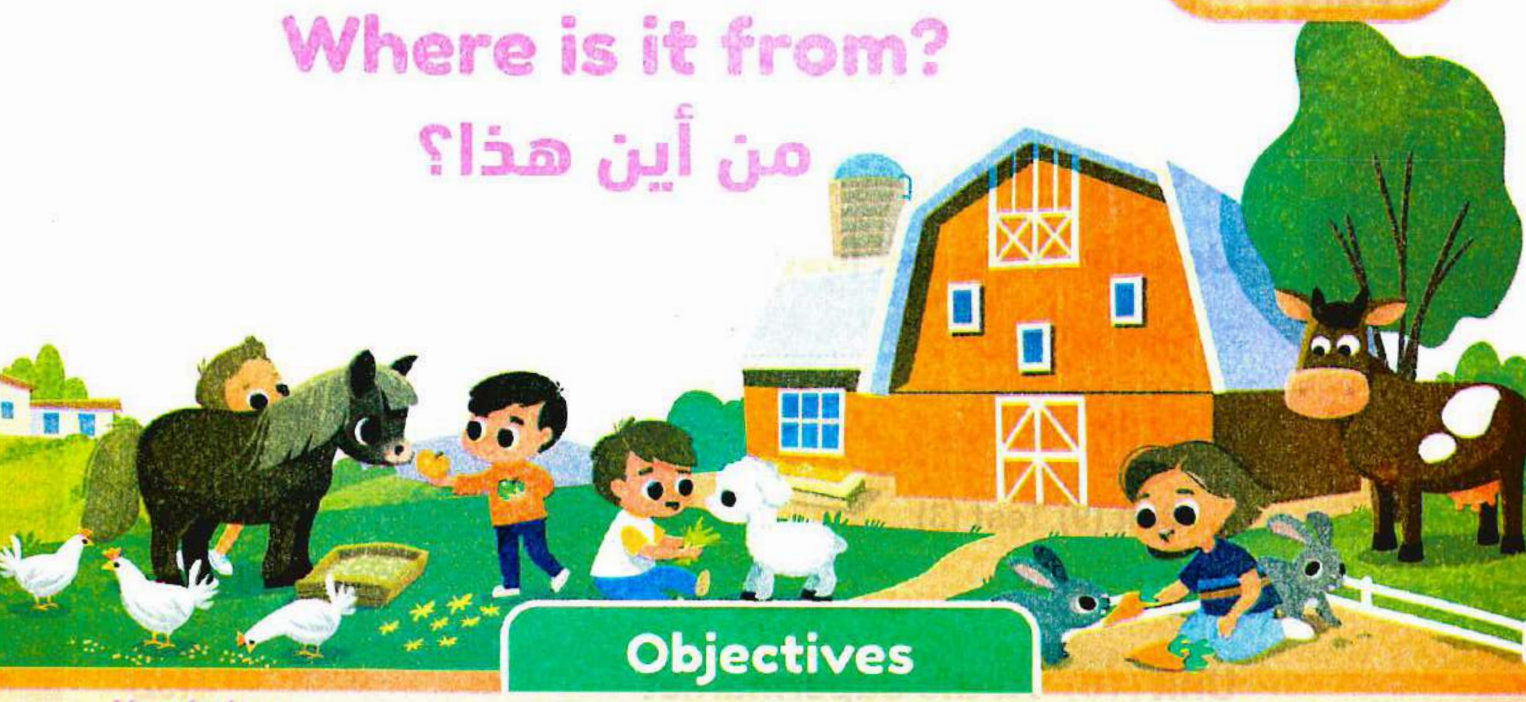
# Contents

Theme (3):
How the world works

# Unit 7

# Where is it from?

# من أين هذا؟



## Objectives

**Vocabulary**

**Farm animals:** chicken, cow, donkey, duck, fish, goat, horse, rabbit, sheep
**Animal products:** wool, meat, cheese, milk, butter
**Weather:** cloudy, drought, flood, foggy, rainy, snowing, sunny, temperature, thunder and lightning, windy, humid

**Language**

- We get (wool) from (sheep).
- It's very (windy). It's a little (cold).
- There's no (wind).
- Do we get (milk) from (sheep)?
- It's partly (cloudy).
- Giza is the closest.

**Reading**

- A website about traditional Egyptian products

**Phonics**

**cl:** clock, cloud
**pl:** play, plant, plane
**fl:** flag, flood

**Life skills**

Collaboration
Participation

**Values**

Cooperation and respect
Love of country

**Issues and challenges**

Environmental responsibility
National unity
Loyalty and belonging

**Integrated cross-curriculum topics**

**Geography:** places in Egypt, identifying geographical features (river, sea, mountains, desert, etc.) on a map
**Math:** distance, graphs
**Social Studies:** where things come from

# Lessons 1-2 Where is it from? & Reading



## Read and repeat



### Farm animals



horse
حصان



donkey
حمار



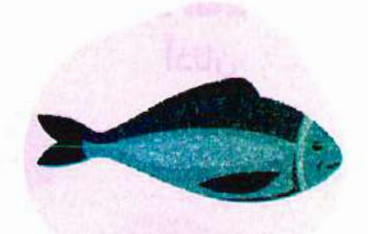
cow
بقرة



sheep
خروف - خِراف



goat
عنزة - معزة



fish
سمك - سمكة



duck
بطة



chicken
دجاجة



rabbit
أرنب

Unit 7

## Parts of the animal's body



**beak**
منقار



**wings**
أجنحة



**feathers**
ريش



**ears**
أذنان



**legs**
أرجل



**tail**
ذيل

## Animal products



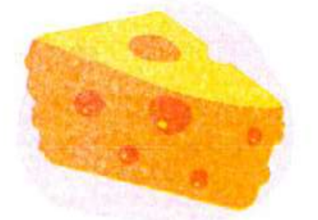
**wool**
صوف




**milk**
لبن



**eggs**
بيض



**cheese**
جبن



**meat**
لحم

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| school trip | رحلة مدرسية | sounds fun | يبدو رائعًا |
| museum | متحف | grass | حشائش - عشب |
| interesting | شيق - ممتع | big x small | كبير x صغير |

# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| like | يحب | liked | أحب |
| learn | يتعلّم | learned | تعلّم |

## Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| go | يذهب | went | ذهب |
| see | يرى | saw | رأى |
| get | يحصل على | got | حصل على |
| do | يفعل - يقوم بـ | did | فَعَل - قام بـ |



## Read and learn



### Where is it from?





1. We went on a school trip yesterday.
ذهبنا في رحلة مدرسية أمس.

2. Did you go to a museum?
هل ذهبتم إلى متحف؟

3. No, we didn't. We went to a farm to learn about animals.
لا، لم نفعل ذلك. ذهبنا إلى مزرعة لنتعلّم عن الحيوانات.

4. That sounds fun!
يبدو هذا ممتعًا!

5. Yes, it was! We saw horses, sheep, cows and ducks. It was very interesting.
نعم، لقد كانت كذلك! رأينا الخيول والأغنام والأبقار والبط. كانت رحلة ممتعة جدًا.

## Reading

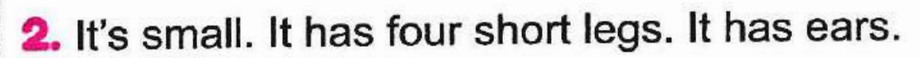


We went to the farm to see the animals. We learned about **animal products**. We get lots of things from animals. We get **wool** and milk from sheep. We get eggs and meat from chickens. We get meat and milk from cows. We get wool, milk and meat from goats.

ذهبنا إلى المزرعة لرؤية الحيوانات. تعلمنا عن المنتجات الحيوانية. نحن نحصل على الكثير من الأشياء من الحيوانات. نحن نحصل على الصوف والحليب من الأغنام. ونحصل على البيض واللحوم من الدجاج. ونحصل على اللحوم والحليب من الأبقار. ونحصل على الصوف والحليب واللحوم من الماعز.

## Read, guess and write:

**1.** It's small. It has wings, feathers and a beak. It likes water.



إنها صغيرة. لها أجنحة وريش ومنقار. وتحب الماء.

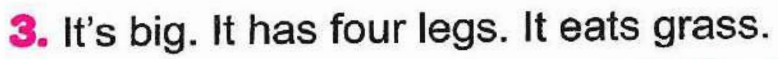
..................

**2.** It's small. It has four short legs. It has ears.

إنه صغير. له أربعة أرجل قصيرة. وله أذنان.

..................

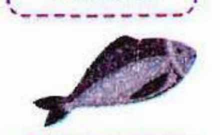
**3.** It's big. It has four legs. It eats grass.



إنها كبيرة. لها أربعة أرجل. وتأكل العشب.

..................

**4.** It's small. It lives in water. It swims. It doesn't have arms or legs.

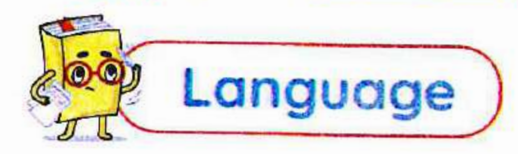


إنها صغيرة. تعيش في الماء. وتسبح وليس لها أذرع أو أرجل.

..................



Unit 7







يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

**Examples:**

- We went on a school trip yesterday.
- We saw horses, sheep, cows and ducks.
- We learned about animal products.

- **We use it to express actions that happened in the past.**

يُستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي.

- **We sometimes use (yesterday) with the past simple tense.**

أحيانًا نستخدم كلمة (yesterday) بمعنى (أمس) مع زمن الماضي البسيط.

- **To make (Yes or No question), we use (Did) at the beginning of the question with the stem verb.**

عند عمل سؤال بادئ بفعل مساعد في زمن الماضي البسيط، نبدأ السؤال بـ (Did) مع الفعل في المصدر (مصدر الفعل هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون أي اضافات).

**Examples:**

- Did you go to a museum?
  - No, we didn't.
- Did you learn about animal products?
  - Yes, we did.

## Asking and answering questions using the present simple tense.

السؤال والإجابة باستخدام زمن المضارع البسيط.

**Examples:**

- Do we get milk from ducks? هل نحصل على الحليب من البط؟
  - No, we don't! لا!
- Do we get wool from sheep? هل نحصل على الصوف من الأغنام؟
  - Yes, we do. نعم.

### What products do we get from animals?

ما المنتجات التي نحصل عليها من الحيوانات؟

- We get eggs and meat from chickens.



- We get wool and milk from sheep.





- We get meat and milk from cows.
- We get wool, milk and meat from goats.



## Exercises on Lessons 1-2

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. We get milk | a) No, we haven't. |
| 2. Did you go to a museum? | b) Yes, we do. |
| 3. We went on a school | c) from cows. |
| 4. Do we get wool from sheep? | d) No, we didn't. |
| | e) trip yesterday. |

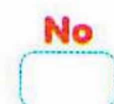
## 2 Mark (✓) the correct answer:

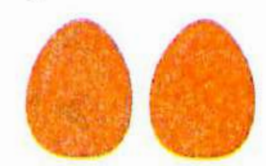
1. The duck has got wings.

Yes  No 



2. We get eggs from goats.

Yes  No 



3. We went to the farm.

Yes  No 



4. We get meat from cows.

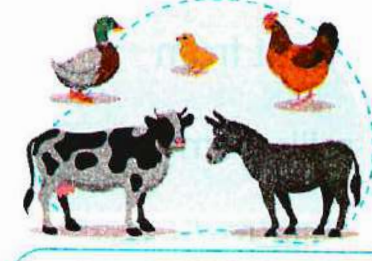
Yes  No 



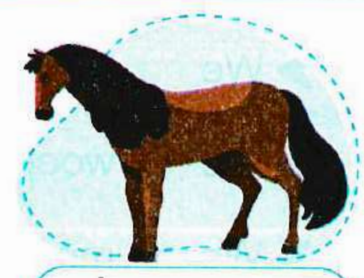
## 3 Supply the missing letters:



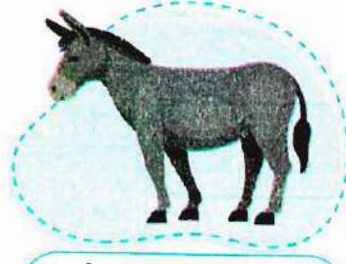
f _ _ _



a _ _ _ _ _ _ _



h _ _ _ _



d _ _ _ _ _



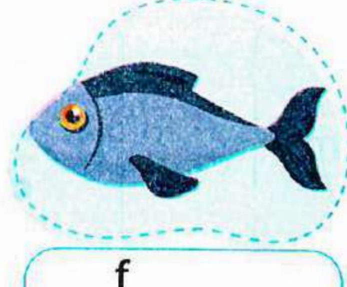
c _ _



s _ _ _ _



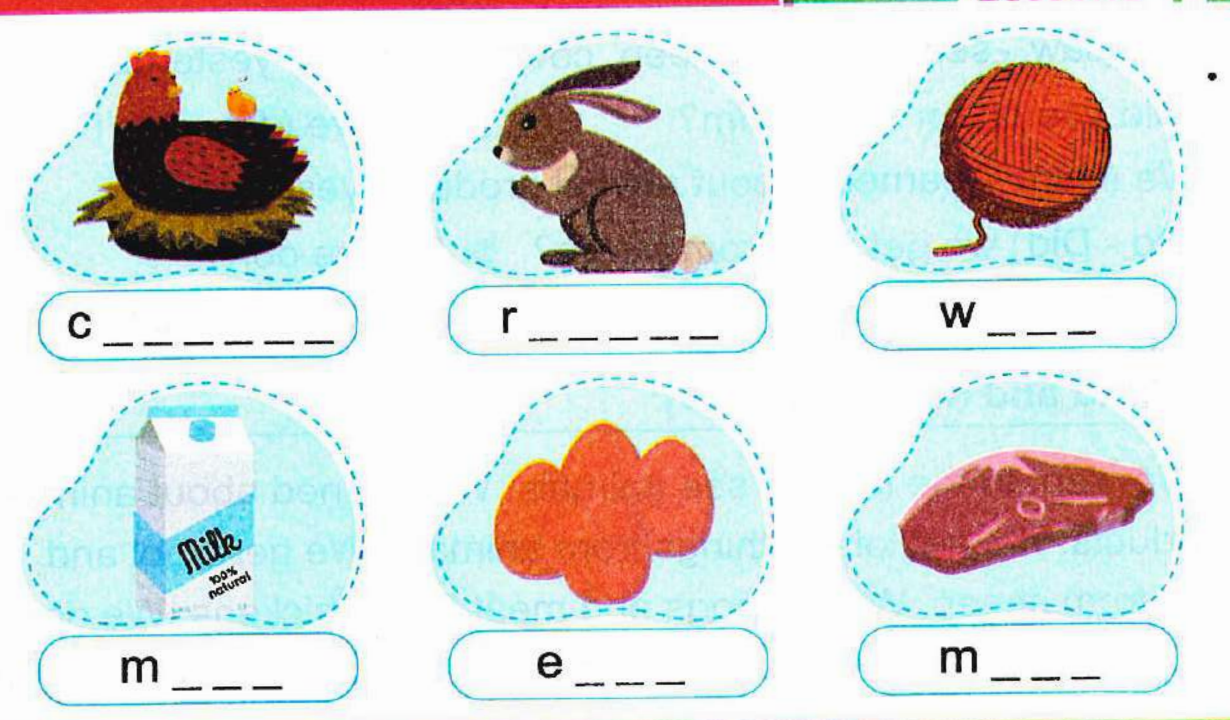
g _ _ _



f _ _ _



d _ _ _




c _ _ _ _ _ _ _  r _ _ _ _ _ _  w _ _ _

m _ _ _  e _ _ _  m _ _ _

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. We get milk and meat from (cows - chickens).
2. We get eggs from (sheep - chickens).
3. We get wool from goats and (sheep - cows).
4. The (sheep - goat - duck) is small. It has wings, feathers and a beak. It likes water.
5. We get (eggs - wool - juice) from sheep.
6. The (rabbit - duck - fish) is small. It has four short legs. It has ears.
7. We get (eggs - cheese - wool) from chickens.
8. The (fish - chicken - cow) is big. It has four legs. It eats grass.
9. We get (milk - wool - eggs) from cows.
10. The (fish - donkey - rabbit) is small. It lives in water. It swims.
11. We get (meat - grass - eggs) from goats.

## 5 Choose the correct answer:

1. We (go - went) on a school trip yesterday.
2. (Do - Did) you go to a museum yesterday?

3. We (saw - see) horses, sheep, cows and ducks yesterday.
4. Did you go on a museum? ➤ No, we (did - don't - didn't).
5. We (learn - learned) about animal products yesterday.
6. (Do - Did) we get milk from ducks? ➤ No, we don't!
7. Do we get wool from sheep? ➤ Yes, we (do - did - don't)!

## 6 Read and mark (✔) or (✘):

We went to the farm to see animals. We learned about animal products. We get lots of things from animals. We get wool and milk from sheep. We get eggs and meat from chickens. We get meat and milk from cows. We get wool, milk and meat from goats.

1. We get wool from sheep. ( )
2. We get milk from ducks. ( )
3. We get meat from cows. ( )
4. We get eggs from chickens. ( )

## 7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. yesterday - We - on - a school trip - went.

   ✓ ........................................................ .

2. go - you - a museum - Did - to?

   ✓ ........................................................ ?

3. from - chickens - eggs - get - We.

   ✓ ........................................................ .

4. from sheep - Do - wool - we - get?

   ✓ ........................................................ ?

5. We - to see - animals - the farm - to - went.

   ✓ ........................................................ .

## 8 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts:

1



We get .................. from chickens.

2



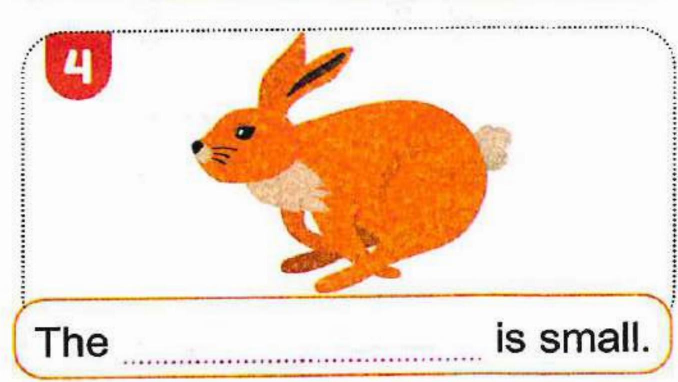
The .................. has got wings.

3



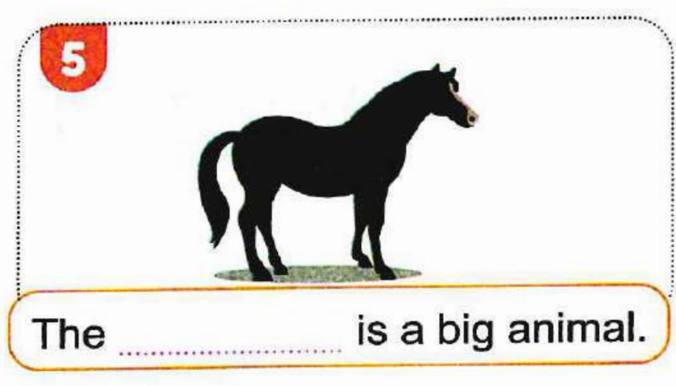
We get .................. from cows.

4



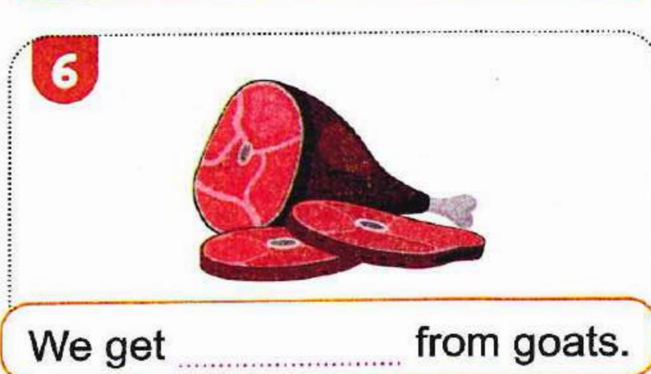
The .................. is small.

5



The .................. is a big animal.

6



We get .................. from goats.

## 9 Copy the following sentence:



We went on a school trip.

# Lesson 3 Language use





## Read and repeat



### Places









| farm | library | desert | oasis |
|---|---|---|---|
| مزرعة | مكتبة | صحراء | واحة |











| beach | park | restaurant | sports center |
|---|---|---|---|
| شاطئ | حديقة عامة | مطعم | مركز رياضي |

### Extra Vocabulary



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **the environment** | البيئة | **Why** | لماذا |
| **the world** | العالم | **paper** | ورق |
| **supermarket** | سوبر ماركت | **plastic** | بلاستيك |

### Verbs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **have lunch** | يتناول الغداء | **buy food** | يشتري الطعام |
| **go swimming** | يذهب للسباحة | **get fit** | يصبح لائقًا بدنيًا |
| **recycle** | يعيد تدوير | **keep tidy** | يحافظ عليه مرتبًا |
| **exercise** | يتمرن - يتدرّب | **look after** | يعتني بـ - يهتم بـ |



# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| visit | يزور | visited |
| look after | يعتني بـ | looked after |
| play | يلعب | played |
| tidy up | يرتب | tidied up |

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| exercise | يتمرن | exercised |
| live | يعيش | lived |
| cycle | يركب دراجة | cycled |
| recycle | يعيد تدوير | recycled |

## Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| read | يقرأ | read |
| have | يتناول - يمتلك | had |

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| buy | يشتري | bought |
| keep | يحافظ | kept |



## Language

**Why** لماذا ⟶ **to** لكي + **inf.** المصدر

**لاحظ أن:**

السؤال البادئ بـ (**Why**) يسأل عن السبب، ويمكننا الإجابة عليه بـ :

**to** لكي + **inf.** المصدر

**because** لأن + **sentence** جملة

**Examples:**

- Why do we exercise? لماذا نتمرّن؟
  - To keep fit. لكي نحافظ على لياقتنا البدنية.



- Why do we go to the library? لماذا نذهب إلى المكتبة؟
  - To read books. لكي نقرأ الكتب.
- Why do we tidy up? لماذا نرتب؟
  - To keep our house tidy. لكي نحافظ على منزلنا مرتبًا.
- Why do we recycle paper and plastic? لماذا نعيد تدوير الورق والبلاستيك؟
  - To look after the environment. لكي نعتني بالبيئة.
- Why do we go to school? لماذا نذهب إلى المدرسة؟
  - To learn about the world. لكي نتعلم عن العالم.
- Why do you exercise? لماذا تتمرّن؟
  - Because I want to keep fit. لأنني أريد أن أحافظ على لياقتي البدنية.

**to لكي + inf. المصدر**

تُستخدم (to) ثم المصدر للتعبير عن الغرض.

**Examples:**

- We went to the farm to learn about animals. ذهبنا إلى المزرعة لنتعلم عن الحيوانات.
- We went to Alexandria to visit the library. ذهبنا إلى الإسكندرية لزيارة المكتبة.
- We went to the beach to go swimming. ذهبنا إلى الشاطئ للسباحة.
- We went to the desert to see the oasis. ذهبنا إلى الصحراء لرؤية الواحة.
- We went to the sports center to play basketball. ذهبنا إلى المركز الرياضي للعب كرة السلة.
- We went to Cairo to visit the museum. ذهبنا إلى القاهرة لزيارة المتحف.
- We went to the restaurant to have lunch. ذهبنا إلى المطعم لتناول الغداء.



## Exercises on Lesson 3

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. Why do we tidy up? | a) to learn about the world. |
| 2. We recycle paper and plastic. | b) To eat. |
| 3. Why do we exercise? | c) To keep our house tidy. |
| 4. We go to school | d) to look after the environment. |
| | e) To keep fit. |

### 2 Mark (✓) the correct answer:

1. We went to the farm to go swimming.

Yes No



2. We went to the beach to learn about animals.

Yes  No 



3. We go to the library to read books.

Yes No



4. We went to Cairo to visit the museum.

Yes  No 



5. We cycle to school to keep fit.

Yes  No 



6. We went to the restaurant to have lunch.

Yes   No 



## 3 Supply the missing letters:

b _ _ _ _

o _ _ _ _

d _ _ _ _ _

p _ _ _

r _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

f _ _ _

l _ _ _ _ _ _

s _ _ _ _ _ c _ _ _ _ _

s _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Why - What - Who) do we go to the library? ➤ To read books.
2. We exercise (because - so - to) keep fit.
3. We went to Alexandria (to - so - because) visit the library.
4. (Where - What - Why) do we go to the desert? ➤ To see the oasis.
5. Why do we tidy up? ➤ (So - To - Because) keep our house tidy.
6. We tidy up to (keeps - kept - keep) our house tidy.
7. We went to Cairo to (visit - visits - visited) the museum.
8. We went to the farm to (learn - visit - go) about animals.
9. We went to the sports center to (have - play - keep) basketball.



10. We recycle paper and plastic to (look at - look after - look for) the environment.
11. We went to the beach to (go - do - want) swimming.
12. We went to the restaurant to (drink - tidy - have) lunch.

## 5 Read and complete as in the example:

Activity Book

**(go swimming - play basketball - see the oasis - learn about animals - have lunch - visit the museum)**

1. We went to the sports center ....to play basketball........ .
2. We went to the farm ........................................ .
3. We went to Cairo ........................................ .
4. We went to the restaurant ........................................ .
5. We went to the beach ........................................ .
6. We went to the desert ........................................ .

## 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

Activity Book

1. fit - exercise - do - to get - We. ✓ ........................................ .
2. plastic - We recycle - the environment - to look after.
3. to buy - the supermarket - go to - We - food. ✓ ........................................ .
4. the library - We - books - visit - to read. ✓ ........................................ .

## 7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. why do we go to alexandria ✓ ........................................
2. i went to the beach to go swimming ✓ ........................................
3. we went to cairo to visit the museum ✓ ........................................

## 8 Copy the following sentence:

We tidy up to keep our house tidy.

........................................

Term 2

## Lesson 4 Reading



### Read and repeat





**Egypt**
مصر

**different places**
أماكن مختلفة



**map**
خريطة



**old city**
مدينة قديمة



**desert**
صحراء



**mountain**
جبل



**farmland**
أرض زراعية



**lake**
بحيرة



**oasis**
واحة



**oases**
واحات



**pyramids**
أهرامات



**temple**
معبد



**the Mediterranean Sea**
البحر الأبيض المتوسط



**the Red Sea**
البحر الأحمر



**the River Nile**
نهر النيل



**next to**
بجوار - بجانب

# Directions









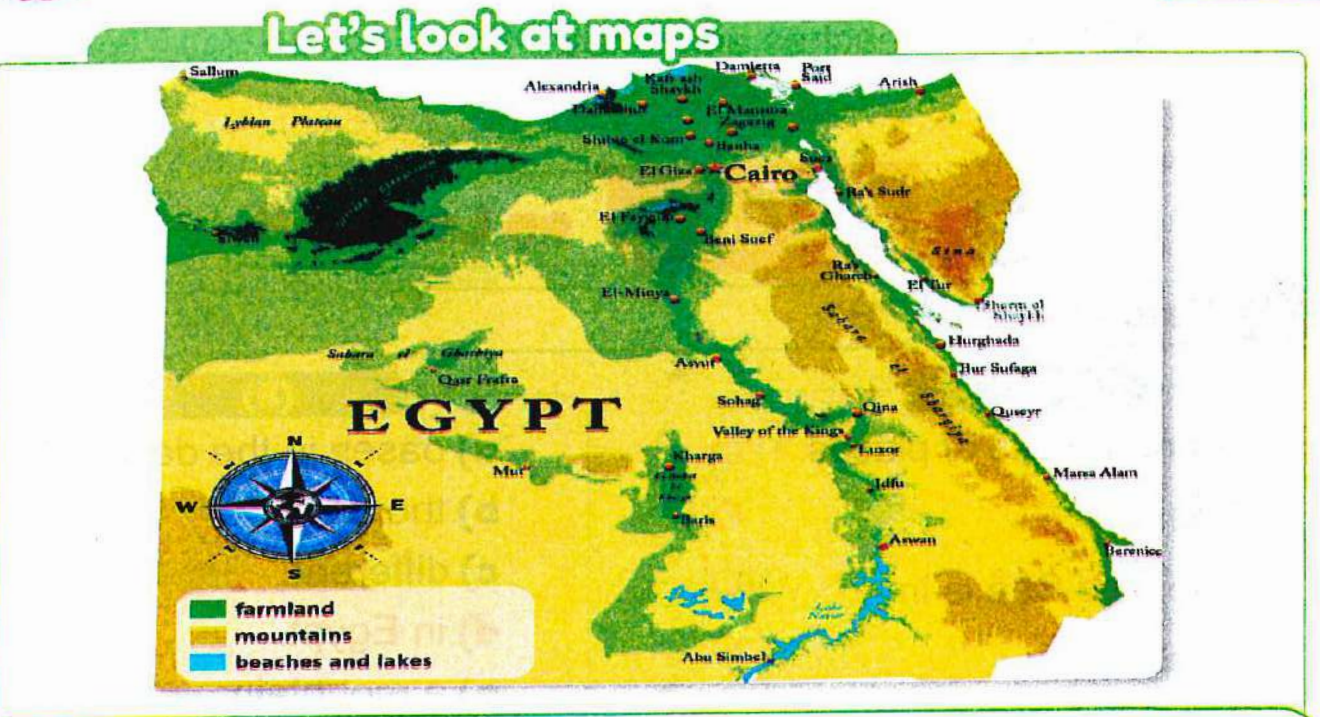
| north | south | east | west |
|---|---|---|---|
| شمال | جنوب | شرق | غرب |





## Read and learn

### Let's look at maps




There are lots of different places in Egypt. There are deserts and **mountains**. There are **oases** in the desert and farmland around the River Nile. There are beaches and **lakes**. Egypt is next to the sea, too. It has the **Mediterranean Sea** in the **north** and the Red Sea in the **east**. There are also very old cities, pyramids and **temples**.

يوجد الكثير من الأماكن المختلفة في مصر. يوجد صحاري وجبال. ويوجد واحات في الصحراء وأرض زراعية حول نهر النيل. يوجد شواطئ وبحيرات. تعتبر مصر مجاورة للبحر أيضًا. لديها البحر الأبيض المتوسط في الشمال والبحر الأحمر في الشرق. يوجد بها أيضًا مدن قديمة جدًا وأهرامات ومعابد.

## Unit 7



## Language

**Remember:**
- **There is** يوجد (تتبع باسم مفرد)
- **There are** يوجد (تتبع باسم جمع)

**Examples:**

- There si a lake. يوجد بحيرة.
- There era temples. توجد معابد.
- There si an oasis in the desert. توجد واحة في الصحراء.
- There era beaches and lakes. توجد شواطئ وبحيرات.



## Exercises on Lesson 4

**1 Match "A" with "B":**

**(A)**
1. There are lots of places
2. There is
3. The Red Sea is in
4. There are

**(B)**
- a) oases in the desert.
- b) the east.
- c) different.
- d) in Egypt.
- e) a mountain.

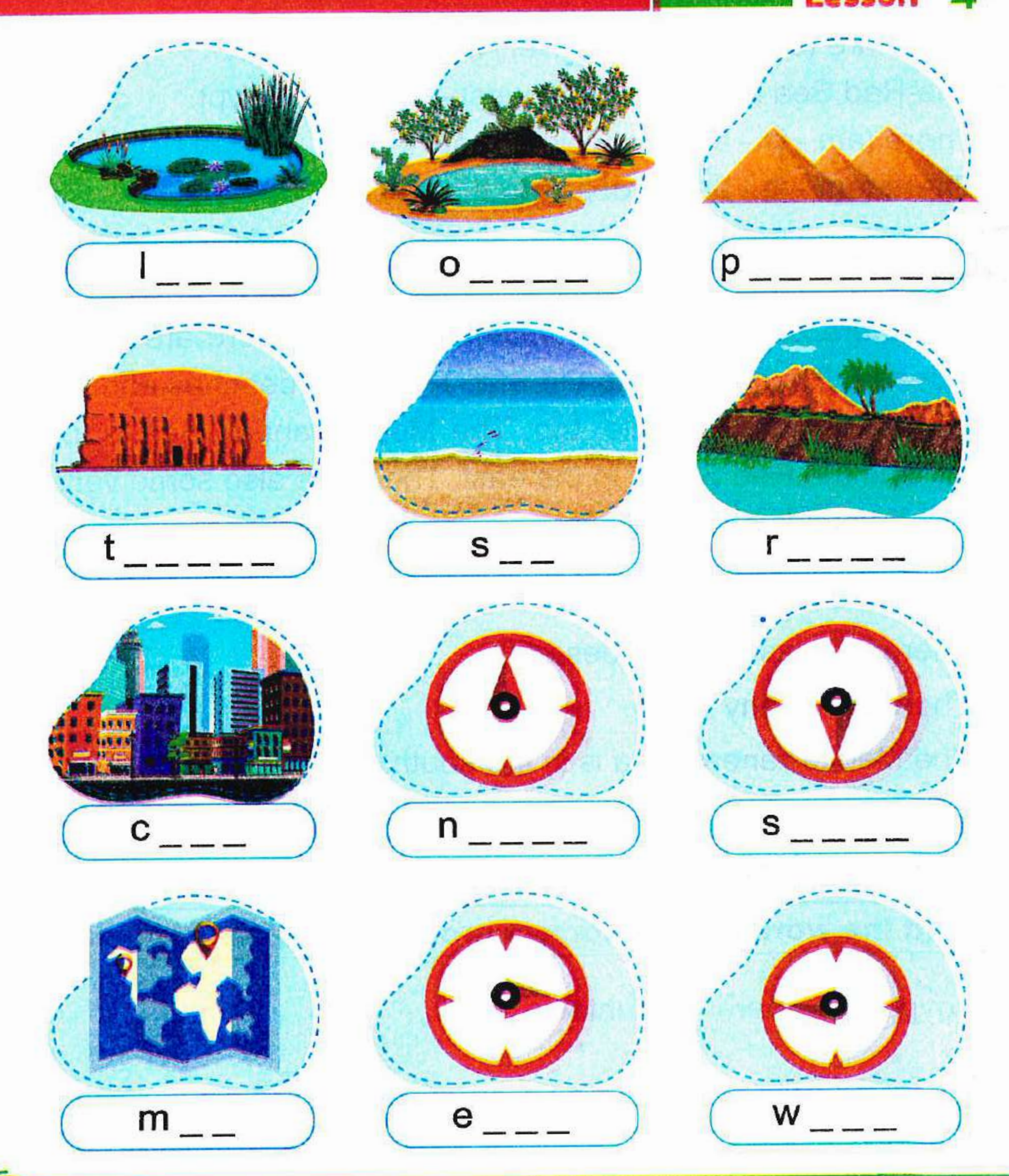
**2 Supply the missing letters:**





d _ _ _ _ _ m _ _ _ _ _ _ _ f _ _ _ _ _ _ _

Term 2




## 3 Choose the correct answer:

1. There (am - is - are) a lake.
2. There (am - is - are) pyramids and temples.
3. The Mediterranean Sea is in the (north - south - west) of Egypt.
4. There is a (oasis - oases - mountain).

5. There are (beach - lakes - river) in Egypt.
6. The Red Sea is in the (east - west - south) of Egypt.
7. There (am - is - are) very old cities.
8. There (am - is - are) a desert in the west.

## 4 Read and mark (✔) or (✗):

There are deserts and mountains in Egypt. There are oases in the desert. Egypt is next to the sea. There are beaches and lakes, and there's the River Nile, too. The Mediterranean Sea is in the north and the Red Sea is in the east. There are also some very old cities, pyramids and temples.

1. There are mountains in Egypt. ( )
2. There are oases in the desert. ( )
3. There aren't any lakes. ( )
4. The Mediterranean Sea is in the south. ( )
5. The Red Sea is in the east. ( )
6. There are some old temples and pyramids. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. Egypt - in - There - mountains - are.

   ✓ ........................................................................ .

2. is - Egypt - the sea - to - next.

   ✓ ........................................................................ .

3. the desert - in - are - There - oases.

   ✓ ........................................................................ .

4. farmland - is - There - Nile - the River - around.

   ✓ ........................................................................ .

## Lessons 5 Listening and reading



### Read and repeat




Nile Delta
دلتا النيل


farmland
أرض زراعية


the High Dam
السد العالي


electricity
كهرباء



Sinai Peninsula
شبه جزيرة سيناء


mountain range
سلسلة جبال


Bedouin culture
ثقافة بدوية


sand dunes
كثبان رملية


empty
فارغ


oasis
واحة

### Crops


olives
زيتون


figs
تين


dates
بلح




**rice**
أرز


**cotton**
قطن


**wheat**
قمح

## Verbs


**grow**
يزرع


**keep**
يربي


**control**
يتحكم


**build**
يبني

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| area | منطقة | famous | مشهور |
| farmer | فلاح | beautiful | جميل |
| good for farming | صالح (جيد) للزراعة | look red | تبدو حمراء |
| farm animals | حيوانات المزرعة | important | هام - مهم |
| plants | نباتات | rocks | صخور |
| grapes | عنب | use | يستخدم - يستعمل |
| where | حيث | enter | يدخل |

## Activity Book

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| climbing mountains | تسلُّق الجبال | museum | متحف |
| all of it | كلها | building | مبنى |



# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| walk | يمشي | walked | مَشَى |
| enter | يدخل | entered | دَخَل |
| climb | يتسلّق | climbed | تَسَلّق |
| use | يستخدم - يستعمل | used | استخدَم - استعمَل |
| control | يتحكم | controlled | تحكّم في |

## Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| grow | يزرع | grew | زَرَع |
| make | يصنع - يجعل | made | صَنَع - جَعَل |
| build | يبني | built | بَنَى |
| keep | يربي (حيوانات) | kept | رَبّى (حيوانات) |

## Vocabulary Study




**A farmland** : is a place where we can grow plants and keep animals.
الأرض الزراعية هي مكان يمكننا زراعة النباتات وتربية الحيوانات به.

**A delta** : is a place where the river enters the sea.
الدلتا هي المكان الذي يدخل فيه النهر إلى البحر.

**An oasis** : is a place in the desert with water.
الواحة هي مكان في الصحراء به ماء.

**A peninsula** : is land with water around it.
شبه الجزيرة هي أرض يوجد حولها ماء.

**A dam** : controls water in a river.
يتحكم السد في ماء النهر.

**A mountain range** : is an area with lots of mountains.
سلسلة الجبال هي منطقة بها الكثير من الجبال.



## Read and learn





The **Nile Delta** is an area in Egypt with lots of **farmland**. A **delta** is a place where the river enters the sea. This makes the land good for farming. Farmers grow **rice**, **cotton** and **wheat**.

دلتا النيل هي منطقة في مصر بها الكثير من الأراضي الزراعية. تعتبر الدلتا هي المكان الذي يدخل فيه النهر إلى البحر. هذا يجعل الأرض صالحة للزراعة. يزرع المزارعون الأرز والقطن والقمح.



The desert is hot and **empty**. There are **sand dunes**. There are some animals, but not a lot of plants. An **oasis** is a place in a desert where there is water. There are also trees and plants. People can use the water to grow dates, **olives**, **figs** and grapes. They can keep farm animals, too.

الصحراء حارة وفارغة. يوجد كثبان رملية. يوجد بعض الحيوانات، ولكن لايوجد الكثير من النباتات. الواحة هي مكان في الصحراء حيث يوجد ماء. يوجد أيضًا أشجار ونباتات. يستطيع الناس استخدام الماء لزراعة التمور والزيتون والتين والعنب. ويمكنهم تربية حيوانات المزرعة، أيضًا.



The **Sinai Peninsula** is an area of land with water around most of it. It has the Mediterranean Sea in the north, and the Red Sea in the south. The Sinai **mountain range** is very famous. There are mountains in the desert, too. People visit the Red Sea mountains to walk and learn about **Bedouin culture.** The mountains are beautiful, and the rocks look red.

شبه جزيرة سيناء هي مساحة من الأرض محاط معظمها بالمياه. محاطة بالبحر الأبيض المتوسط في الشمال، والبحر الأحمر في الجنوب. تعتبر سلسلة جبال سيناء مشهورة جدًا. يوجد جبال في الصحراء، أيضًا. يزور الناس جبال البحر الأحمر للمشي والتعرف على الثقافة البدوية. إن الجبال جميلة، وتبدو الصخور حمراء.



The **High Dam** is very big. It is about 48 years old. People built it to **control** the Nile River. They also use it to make **electricity**. It is very important.

السد العالي كبير جدًا. عمره حوالي 48 سنة. بناه الناس للتحكم في نهر النيل. كما يستخدمونه أيضًا لتوليد الكهرباء. إنه مهم جدًا.



## Exercises on Lesson 5

### 1 Complete the sentences using the following words:



Student's Book

(**mountain range** - **peninsula** - **grow** - **delta** - **dam** - **farmland** - **oasis** - **keep**)

1. A .................... is a place where the river enters the sea.
2. There is a lot of .................... in the Nile Delta.
3. An .................... is a place in the desert with water.
4. People can ................ plants and ................ animals at an oasis.
5. A .................... is land with water around most of it.
6. A ............................ is an area with lots of mountains.
7. A .................... controls water in a river.

### 2 Read and choose (a) or (b):

The Nile Delta is an area in Egypt with lots of farmland. A delta is a place where the river enters the sea. This makes the land good for farming. Farmers grow rice, cotton and wheat.

1. In the Nile Delta, ........................................ .
   a) the Nile enters the sea   b) it is hot and empty
2. A delta is a good place for ........................................ .
   a) climbing mountains   b) farming
3. In the delta, farmers can grow wheat, cotton and ........................ .
   a) rice   b) coffee

## 3 Read and choose (a) or (b):

The desert is hot and empty. There are sand dunes. There are some animals, but not a lot of plants. An oasis is a place in a desert where there is water. There are also trees and plants. People can use the water to grow dates, olives, figs and grapes. They can keep farm animals, too.

1. There are sand dunes in the desert and also some .................. .
   a) museums   b) oases
2. An oasis has ........................................ .
   a) roads and buildings   b) water, trees and plants
3. You can grow .................. and keep farm animals.
   a) dates, figs, olives and grapes   b) tomatoes and apples.

## 4 Read and choose (a) or (b):

The Sinai Peninsula is an area of land with water around most of it. It has the Mediterranean Sea in the north, and the Red Sea in the south. The Sinai mountain range is very famous.

There are mountains in the desert, too. People visit the Red Sea mountains to walk and learn about Bedouin culture. The mountains are beautiful, and the rocks look red.

1. The Sinai Peninsula is an area of land with .......................... .
   a) water around most of it   b) trees around all of it

2. The Sinai Peninsula has the Mediterranean Sea in the north and the .................................. in the south.

a) River Nile b) Red Sea

## 5 Read and choose (a) or (b):

The High Dam is very big. It is about 48 years old. People built it to control the Nile River. They also use it to make electricity. It is very important.

1. The High Dam is about .................................................. .

a) 250 years old b) 48 years old

2. People built the dam to control .................................................. .

a) the Nile River b) the Mediterranean Sea

## 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. and wheat - grow - Farmers - rice.

.................................................................................................... .

2. is - The desert - and - empty - hot.

.................................................................................................... .

3. a place - is - An oasis - the desert - in.

.................................................................................................... .

4. big - very - is - Dam - High - The.

.................................................................................................... .

## 7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. the nile delta is an area in egypt

....................................................................................................

2. the red sea is in the east

....................................................................................................

3. people built the high dam to control the nile river

....................................................................................................

# Lessons 6-7 The weather & Temperature



## Read and repeat



### The weather

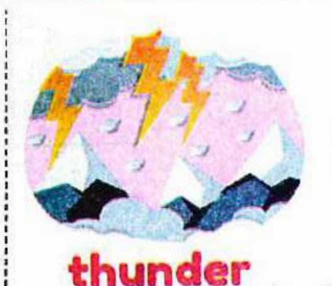


| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **weather**<br>الطقس | **windy**<br>عاصف | **snowing**<br>تمطر ثلجًا | **foggy**<br>مليء بالضباب |
| **sun**<br>الشمس | **sunny**<br>مشمس | **rain**<br>مطر | **rainy**<br>ممطر |
| **humid**<br>رطب | **drought**<br>جفاف | **flood**<br>فيضان - يغمر | **partly rainy**<br>ممطر لبعض الوقت |



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **too hot**<br>حار جدًا جدًا | **warm**<br>دافئ | **cold**<br>بارد | **cool**<br>بارد قليلاً |





**thunder** الرعد



**lightning** البرق



**crops** محاصيل



**different kinds** أنواع مختلفة

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **temperature** | درجة الحرارة | **degree** | درجة مئوية |



## Listen and read



### A weather show



**A:** Hello, and welcome to the weather show! So, what's the weather like in Egypt today?

أهلاً ومرحبًا بكم في عرض الطقس! إذًا، كيف هو الطقس في مصر اليوم؟

**B 1:** In Alexandria, there is rain today. It's cold and wet.

في الإسكندرية، يوجد مطر اليوم. الجو بارد ورطب.

**B 2:** In Cairo, it is very humid. There isn't a lot of wind.

في القاهرة، الجو رطب جدًا. لايوجد الكثير من الرياح.

**B 3:** In Luxor, there was a little thunder and lightning this morning. But it didn't rain.

في الأقصر، كان يوجد القليل من الرعد والبرق هذا الصباح، لكنها لم تمطر.

**A:** There isn't a lot of good weather today. Is it sunny anywhere?

لا يوجد الكثير من الطقس الجيد اليوم. هل هو مشمس في أي مكان؟

**B 4:** Yes, it is! It is sunny in Giza. It was foggy yesterday, but today is lovely.

نعم، هو كذلك! إن الجو مشمس في الجيزة. كان الجو ضبابيًا بالأمس، لكنه جميل اليوم.



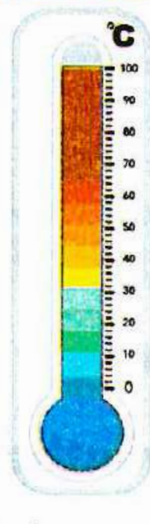
## Listen and read



### Temperature




25 - 40°C




cool

5 - 15°C




15 - 25°C

cold

0 - 5°C

- When the weather is about 40 degrees, it's hot.
  عندما تصل درجة حرارة الطقس إلى حوالي 40 درجة، يكون الجو حارًا.
- When the weather is about 25 degrees, it's warm.
  عندما تصل درجة حرارة الطقس إلى حوالي 25 درجة، يكون الجو دافئًا.
- When the weather is about 15 degrees, it's cool.
  عندما تصل درجة حرارة الطقس إلى حوالي 15 درجة، يكون الجو باردًا قليلًا.
- When the weather is about 5 degrees, it's cold.
  عندما تصل درجة حرارة الطقس إلى حوالي 5 درجات، يكون الجو باردًا.



## Read and learn





Warm weather is good for farming. We need sun and rain to grow plants. When there is no water and the weather is too hot, we can't grow plants. In the Nile Delta, it is partly sunny and partly rainy. We can grow different kinds of crops.

الطقس الدافئ جيد للزراعة. نحن بحاجة إلى الشمس والمطر لزراعة النباتات. عندما لا يوجد ماء ويكون الطقس حارًا جدًا، لا يمكننا زراعة النباتات. في دلتا النيل، يكون الجو مشمسًا وممطرًا جزئيًا. يمكننا زراعة أنواع مختلفة من المحاصيل.




## Asking about the weather السؤال عن حالة الطقس

### To ask about the weather today:

عند السؤال عن حالة الطقس اليوم:

- What is the weather like today? ما حالة الطقس اليوم؟
  - It's cloudy. إنه غائم.

### To ask about the weather yesterday:

عند السؤال عن حالة الطقس أمس:

- What was the weather like yesterday? كيف كانت حالة الطقس بالأمس؟
  - It was warm. كان الطقس دافئًا.

### To ask about the weather in different places:

عند السؤال عن حالة الطقس في أماكن مختلفة:

- What is the weather like in Alexandria? ما هي حالة الطقس في الإسكندرية؟
  - In Alexandria, there is rain today. It's cold and wet.

    في الإسكندرية، يوجد مطر اليوم. الجو بارد ورطب.
- What was the weather like in Luxor? ماذا كانت حالة الطقس في الأقصر؟
  - In Luxor, there was a little thunder and lightning this morning, but it didn't rain.

    في الأقصر، كان يوجد القليل من الرعد والبرق هذا الصباح، لكنها لم تمطر.
- Is it sunny in Giza? هل الجو مشمس في الجيزة؟
  - Yes, it is! It is sunny in Giza. It was foggy yesterday, but today is lovely.

    نعم، هو كذلك! الجو مشمس في الجيزة. كان الجو ضبابيًا بالأمس، لكنه جميل اليوم.

Unit 7



## Exercises on Lessons 6-7

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

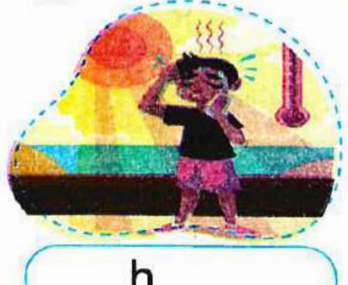
**(A)**

1. What's the weather like today?
2. It's cold
3. What was the weather like yesterday?
4. It's hot

**(B)**

- [ ] a) in summer.
- [ ] b) It was windy.
- [ ] c) It's foggy.
- [ ] d) in winter.
- [ ] e) good for farming.

### 2 Supply the missing letters:



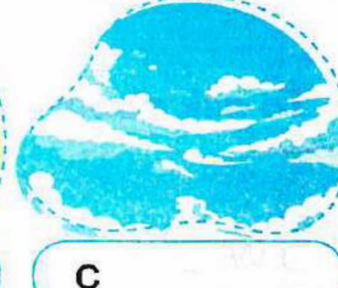
h _ _



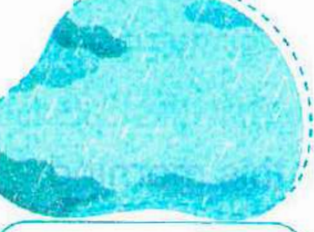
w _ _ _ _



s _ _ _ _



c _ _ _ _ _



r _ _ _ _



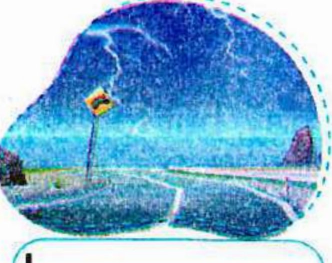
c _ _ _



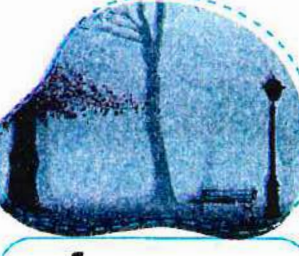
s _ _ _ _ _ _



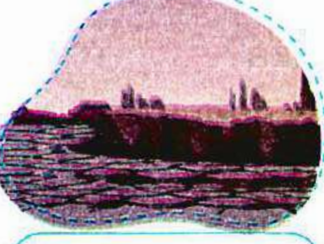
t _ _ _ _ _ _ _



l _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _



f _ _ _ _



d _ _ _ _ _ _



f _ _ _ _

## 3 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

Warm weather is good for farming. We need sun and rain to grow plants. When there is no water and the weather is too hot, we can't grow plants. In the Nile Delta, it is partly sunny and partly rainy. We can grow different kinds of crops.

1. Hot weather is good for farming. ( )
2. We need sun to grow plants. ( )
3. We don't need water to grow plants. ( )
4. We can grow crops in the Nile Delta. ( )

## 4 Complete the sentences using the words from the box:




(sun - Warm weather - partly sunny - no rain)

1. .................................... is good for farming.
2. When there is .................................., we can't grow plants.
3. We need ............................ and a little rain to grow plants.
4. In the Nile Delta, it is .................................. and partly rainy.

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. was - What - the weather - yesterday - like? ✓ ........................................ ?
2. Giza - is - in - It - sunny. ✓ ........................................ .
3. Warm - is - weather - farming - good for. ✓ ........................................ .
4. yesterday - It - foggy - was. ✓ ........................................ .

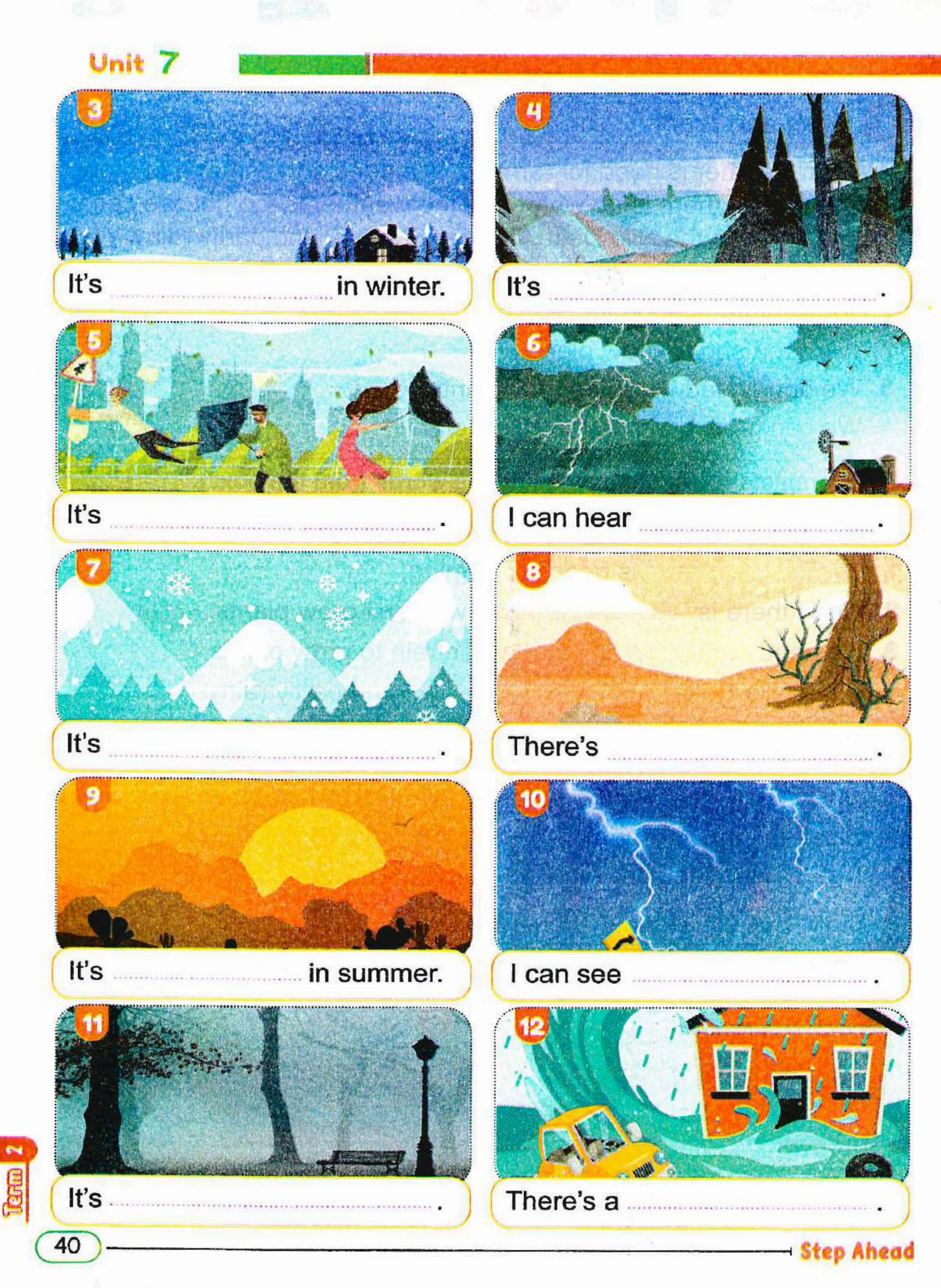
## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts:



It's .................................................. .



It's .................................................. .


3
It's ........................ in winter.
4
It's ........................ .
5
It's ........................ .
6
I can hear ........................ .
7
It's ........................ .
8
There's ........................ .
9
It's ........................ in summer.
10
I can see ........................ .
11
It's ........................ .
12
There's a ........................ .

# Lesson 8 Traditional products in Egypt





## Read and repeat



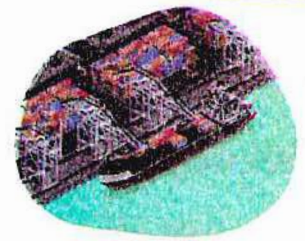
papyrus reed
قصب البردي



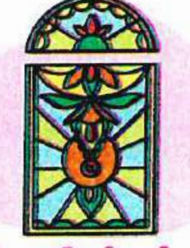
making baskets
صنع السلال



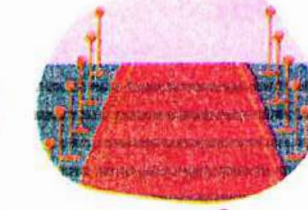
furniture
أثاث



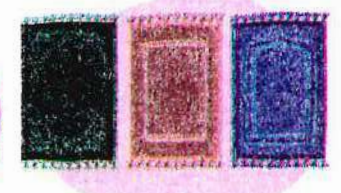
port
ميناء



colorful glass
زجاج ملون



carpets
سجاد



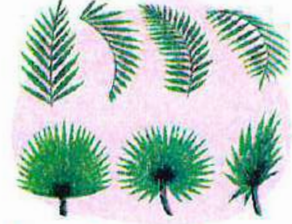
rugs
سجاد (صغير)



loom
نول النسيج



weave
ينسج



palm tree leaves
أوراق شجرة النخيل



sand
رمل



blow
ينفخ

### Places & Cities

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Nubia | النوبة | Damietta | دمياط |
| southern Egypt | جنوب مصر | Al-Fayoum | الفيوم |
| northern Sudan | شمال السودان | Giza | الجيزة |



## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| along the Nile | على امتداد النيل | well-known for | مشهور بـ |
| boat | قارب | famous for | مشهور بـ |
| other countries | دول أخرى | silk | حرير |
| traditional way | طريقة تقليدية | travel | يسافر |
| glass objects | أشياء زجاجية | sell | يبيع |
| different shapes | أشكال مختلفة | buy | يشتري |

## Activity Book

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| products | منتجات | metal | معدن |
| Africa | قارة أفريقيا | useful | مفيد - نافع |
| the world | العالم | wool | صوف |

# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| travel | يسافر | traveled | سافر |
| need | يحتاج | needed | احتاج |

## Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sell | يبيع | sold | باع |
| blow | ينفخ | blew | نَفَخَ |



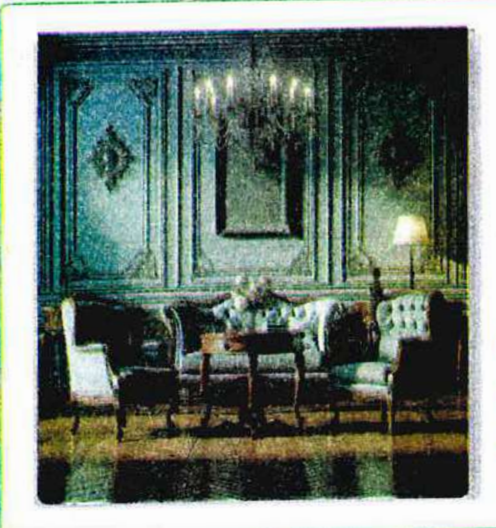


## Read and learn



**Nubia** is a place along the River Nile, in southern Egypt and northern **Sudan**. Nubia is famous for making **baskets**. People use **papyrus reeds** and **palm tree** leaves to make the baskets. They **weave** the leaves or **reeds** together.

النوبة هي مكان على امتداد نهر النيل، في جنوب مصر وشمال السودان. تشتهر النوبة بصنع السلال. يستخدم الناس قصب البردي وأوراق شجرة النخيل لصنع السلال. ينسجون الأوراق أو القصب معًا.



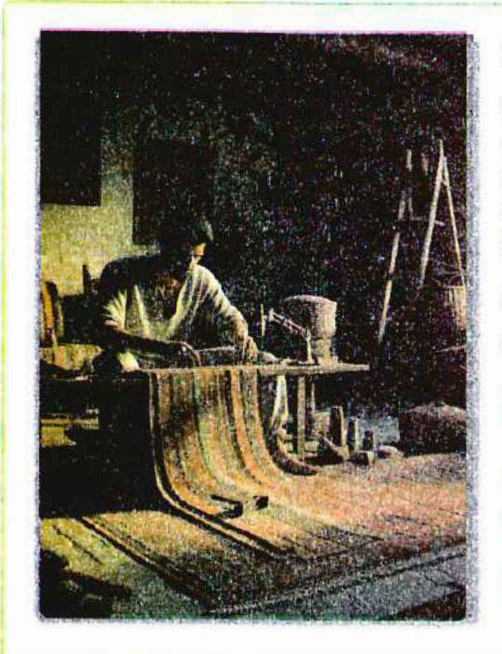
In **Damietta**, there are lots of places where people make **furniture**. Damietta is a **port**, so boats can travel to and from other countries. People in Damietta sell the **furniture** in Egypt and all around the world.

في دمياط، يوجد الكثير من الأماكن التي يصنع فيها الناس الأثاث. دمياط هي ميناء، لذلك يمكن للقوارب السفر من وإلى بلدان أخرى. الناس في دمياط يبيعون الأثاث في مصر وجميع أنحاء العالم.



**Al-Fayoum** is a city in Egypt. People used **sand** to **blow colorful glass** in different shapes. It was beautiful and famous. Today, there are places in Cairo where people make glass objects in the **traditional** way.

الفيوم هي مدينة في مصر. استخدم الناس الرمل لنفخ الزجاج الملون بأشكال مختلفة. كانت جميلة ومشهورة. اليوم، يوجد أماكن في القاهرة حيث يصنع الناس أشياء زجاجية بالطريقة التقليدية.



**Giza** is well-known for making **carpets** and **rugs.** They are very beautiful and people all over the world buy them. People use wool, cotton or silk to **weave** the carpets on a **loom**. There are lots of schools in Giza where people can learn to weave carpets.

تشتهر الجيزة بصناعة السجاد والبسط. إنها جميلة جدًا ويشتريها الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم. يستخدم الناس الصوف أو القطن أو الحرير لنسج السجاد على النول. يوجد الكثير من المدارس في الجيزة حيث يمكن للناس تعلُّم نسج السجاد.



## Exercises on Lesson 8

**1** Supply the missing letters:



b _ _ _ _ _



l _ _ _ _ _

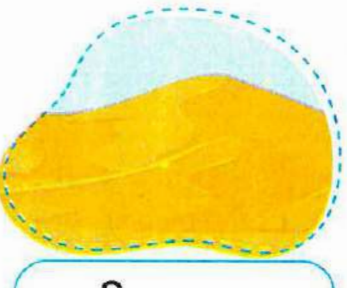


f _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

c _ _ _ _ _



g _ _ _ _



s _ _ _

## 2 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

Nubia is a place along the River Nile, in southern Egypt and northern Sudan. Nubia is famous for making baskets. People use papyrus reeds and palm tree leaves to make the baskets. They weave the leaves or reeds together.

1. Nubia is a place in northern Egypt. (  )
2. Nubia is famous for making furniture. (  )
3. People use papyrus reeds to make the baskets. (  )
4. People weave the leaves or reeds together. (  )

## 3 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

In Damietta, there are lots of places where people make furniture. Damietta is a port, so boats can travel to and from other countries. People in Damietta sell the furniture in Egypt and all around the world.

1. In Damietta, people make baskets. (  )
2. Damietta is a port. (  )
3. In Damietta, boats can travel to and from other countries. (  )
4. People in Damietta sell furniture. (  )

## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

Al-Fayoum is a city in Egypt. People used sand to blow colorful glass in different shapes. It was beautiful and famous. Today, there are places in Cairo where people make glass objects in the traditional way.

1. Al-Fayoum is a village in Egypt. (  )
2. People used sand to make glass. (  )
3. People blow colorful glass in different shapes. (  )
4. There are places in Cairo where people make glass objects in the modern way. (  )

## 5 Read and mark (✔) or (✘):

Giza is well-known for making carpets and rugs. They are very beautiful and people all over the world buy them. People use wool, cotton or silk to weave the carpets on a loom. There are lots of schools in Giza where people can learn to weave carpets.

1. Giza is well-known for making carpets and rugs. ( )
2. People all over the world sell carpets and rugs to Giza. ( )
3. People use wool, cotton or silk to weave the carpets. ( )
4. People can learn to weave carpets in schools in Giza. ( )

## 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. baskets - making - is - Nubia - famous for.
   ✅ ........................................................................ .
2. can - What animals - wool from - get - we?
   ✅ ........................................................................ ?
3. a city - Egypt - in - is - Al-Fayoum.
   ✅ ........................................................................ .
4. can - learn - People - carpets - weave - to.
   ✅ ........................................................................ .

## 7 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. there are lots of schools in giza ✅ ........................................
2. in damietta, people make furniture ✅ ........................................
3. al-fayoum is a city in egypt ✅ ........................................

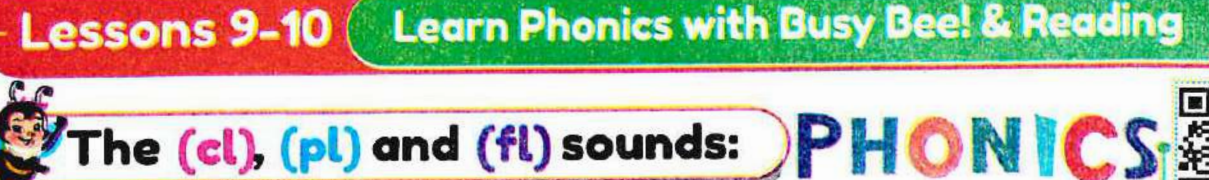
## 8 Copy the following sentence:



There are lots of products in Egypt.



## Lessons 9-10 Learn Phonics with Busy Bee! & Reading



### The (cl), (pl) and (fl) sounds: PHONICS





## (cl)

The letters (cl) make the sound /kl/



**clock**
ساعة حائط



**cloud**
سحابة



**clown**
مهرج - بهلوان



**clay**
صلصال



**clap**
يصفق

## (pl)

The letters (pl) make the sound /pl/



**play**
يلعب



**plate**
طبق



**plants**
نباتات



**planet**
كوكب



**plane**
طائرة

## (fl)

The letters (fl) make the sound /fl/



**flood**
فيضان - طوفان



**flag**
علم

**flute**
ناي - فلوت

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| sizes | أحجام - مقاسات | store | يخزن |
| the smallest | الأصغر | desk | مكتب |
| the biggest | الأكبر | toys | ألعاب أطفال |
| bathroom | حمام | clothes | ملابس |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| expensive | غالٍ - ثمين | birds | طيور |
| soft | ناعم | drink water | يشرب ماء |
| made of | مصنوع من | juice | عصير |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| wooden chair | كرسي خشبي | paint | يدهن - يلون |
| perfect for | مثالي لِـ | town | مدينة صغيرة |
| child's bedroom | حجرة نوم الطفل | Which product | أي منتج |

# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| want | يريد - يرغب | wanted | أراد - رَغِب |
| paint | يدهن - يلون | painted | دَهَن - لَوَّن |

## Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| put | يضع | put | وضع |
| drink | يشرب | drank | شَرِب |



## Read and learn



1. There's a flag on the plane.



2. There's a flood. The plants are in the water.

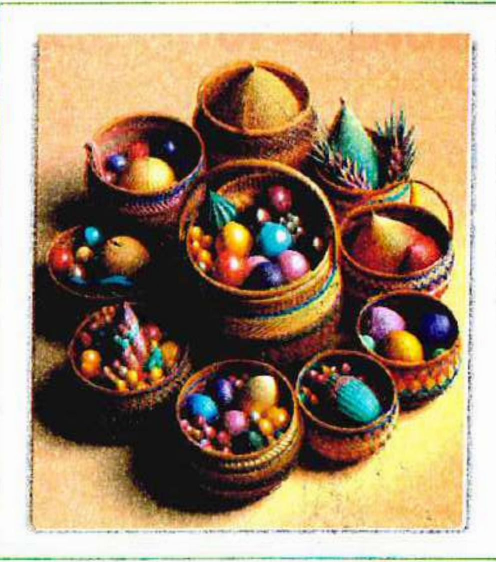


3. There are clouds on the clock.



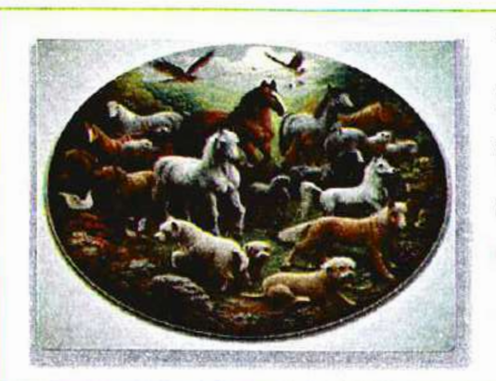
## Reading





These colorful baskets from Nubia are in lots of different sizes. Some are big and some are small. You can use the smallest ones for things on your desk or in your bathroom. You can use the biggest ones to store clothes or toys.

هذه السلال الملونة من النوبة بأحجام مختلفة. بعضها كبير وبعضها صغير. يمكنك استخدام أصغرها للأشياء على مكتبك أو في حمامك. ويمكنك استخدام أكبرها لتخزين الملابس أو الألعاب.



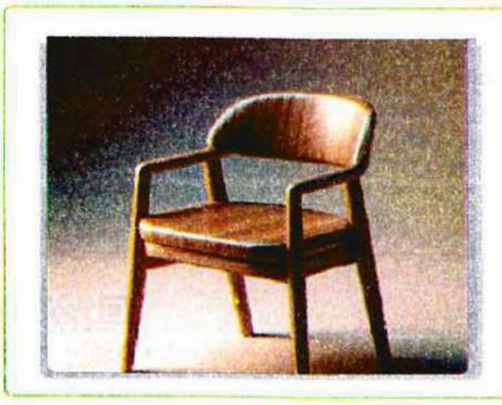
This rug is from Giza. It's expensive, but it's very beautiful and it's big. It's made of wool and it's very soft. There's a picture of animals on it – horses and birds.

هذه السجادة من الجيزة. إنها غالية الثمن، لكنها جميلة جدًا وكبيرة. إنها مصنوعة من الصوف وهو ناعم جدًا. يوجد صورة للحيوانات عليها - الخيول والطيور.



These glasses are from Cairo. They are made of blue and red glass. You can use them to drink water or juice.

هذه الزجاجات من القاهرة. وهي مصنوعة من الزجاج الأزرق والأحمر. يمكنك استخدامها لشرب الماء أو العصير.



This wooden chair is from Damietta. It is perfect for a child's bedroom. You can paint it in different colors – white, gray, red or blue.

هذا الكرسي الخشبي من دمياط. إنه مثالي لغرفة نوم الطفل. يمكنك تلوينه بألوان مختلفة - أبيض أو رمادي أو أحمر أو أزرق.

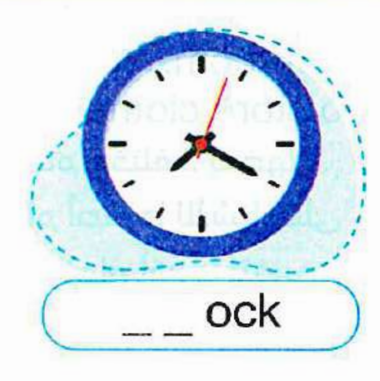


## Exercises on Lessons 9-10

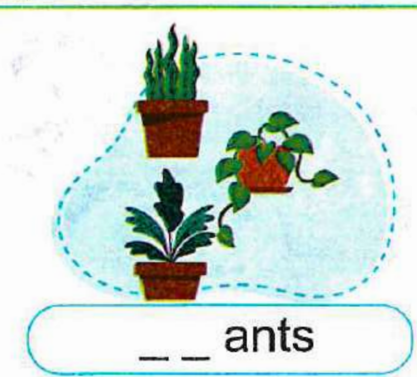
**1** **Complete the words with (cl), (fl) or (pl):**



_ _ ute



_ _ ock



_ _ ants




## 2 Read and mark (✔) or (✘):

Baskets from Nubia are in lots of different sizes. Some are big and some are small. You can use the smallest ones for things on your desk or in your bathroom. You can use the biggest ones to store clothes or toys.

1. Baskets from Nubia are in lots of different boxes. ( )
2. Some are big and some are small. ( )
3. You can use the biggest ones for things on your desk. ( )
4. You can use the smallest ones to store clothes. ( )

## 3 Read and mark (✔) or (✘):

I have a rug in my bedroom. It is from Giza. It's expensive, but it's very beautiful and it's big. It's made of wool and it's very soft. There's a picture of animals on it – horses and birds.

1. I have a basket in my bedroom. ( )
2. It's not expensive. ( )
3. It's made of wool and it's very soft. ( )
4. There's a picture of insects on it. ( )

## 4 Read and mark (✔) or (✘):

Mom has some new glasses. They are from Cairo. They are made of blue and red glass. We can use them to drink water or juice. We have a wooden chair from Damietta. It is perfect for a child's bedroom. We can paint it in different colors – white, gray, red or blue.

1. Mom has some new rugs. ( )
2. They are from Cairo. ( )
3. We have a wooden bed from Damietta. ( )
4. It is perfect for a child's bedroom. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. product - What - your - favorite - is? ✔ ...............................?
2. products - any traditional - make - you - Can? ✔ ...............................?
3. rug - Giza - This - from - is. ✔ ...............................
4. different colors - paint it - You - in - can. ✔ ...............................

## 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

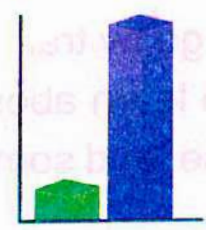
1. this chair is from damietta ✔ ...............................
2. what does nadia put in her basket ✔ ...............................
3. these glasses are from cairo ✔ ...............................

## Lessons 11-12 Math: Graphs & Project

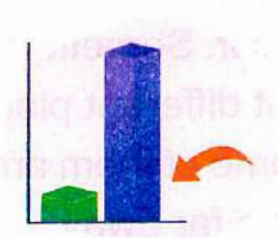




### Read and repeat



**bar graph**
رسم بياني شريطي



**x-axis**
المحور س



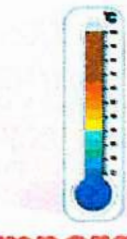
**y-axis**
المحور ص



**distance**
مسافة




**label**
نصنف - نضع ملصقًا



**temperature**
درجة الحرارة



**time**
وقت




**information**
معلومات

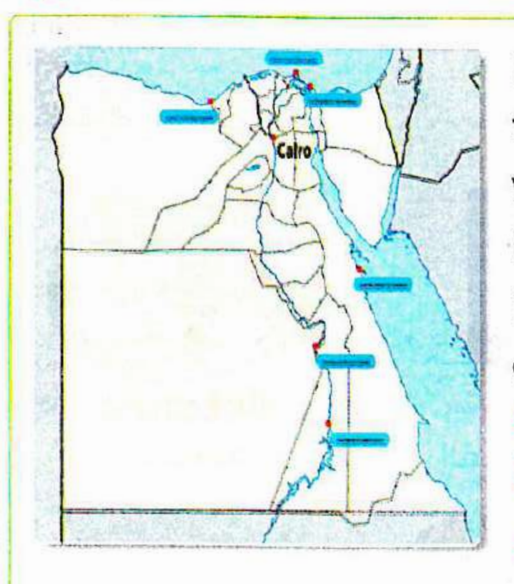
### Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| close to | قريب من | line | خط - سطر |
| closer | أقرب | measure | يقيس |
| far away | بعيد | go up | يصعد |
| farther | أبعد | across the bottom | عبر الجزء السفلي |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| show | يوضح - يبين | how much | ما كمية |
| group | مجموعة | how many | كم عدد |
| compare things | يقارن الأشياء | how far | ما بعد - كم المسافة |
| by train | بالقطار | for example | على سبيل المثال |



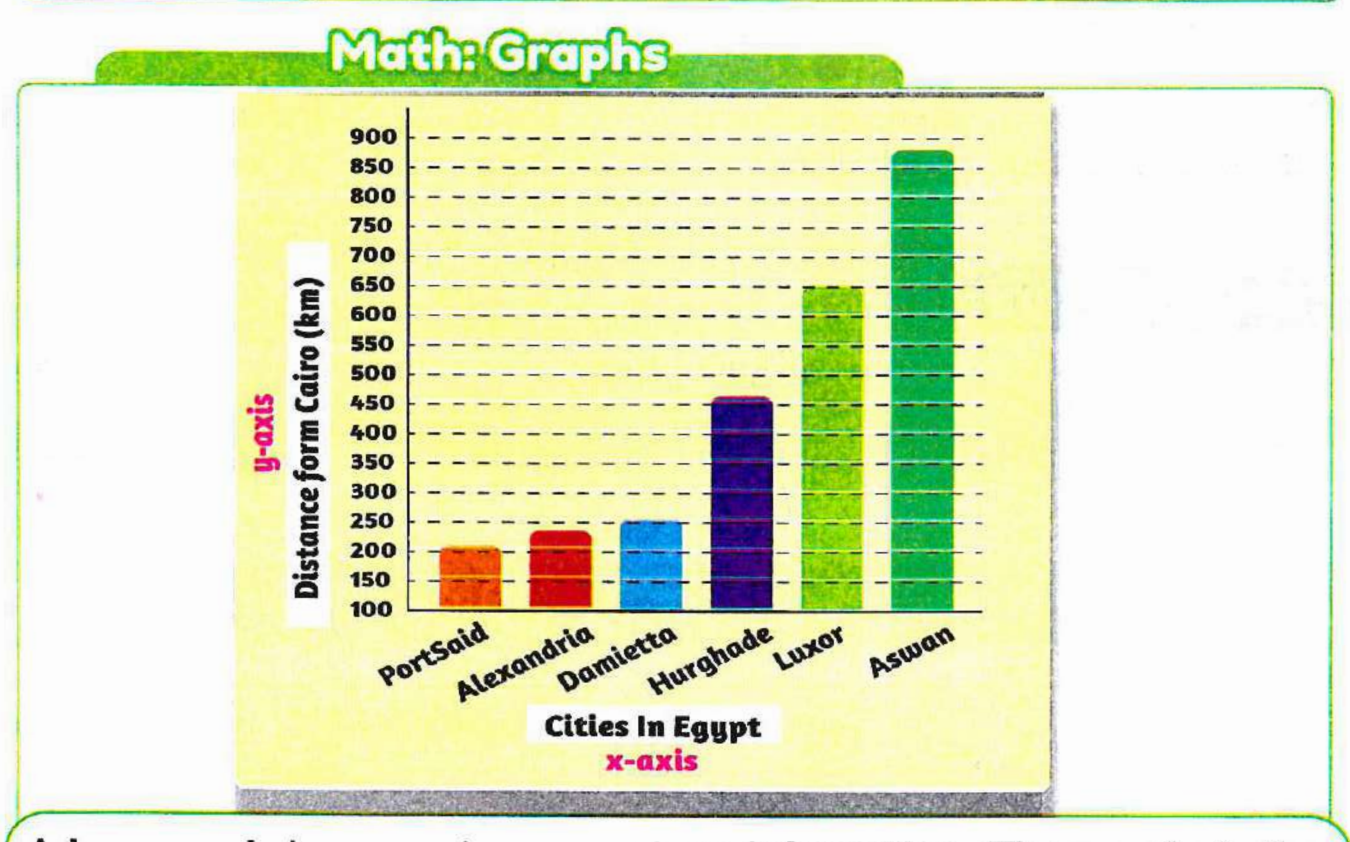
## Read and learn




I live in Cairo with my family. We like to travel to other places in Egypt. Sometimes we go by car. Sometimes we go by train. I like to visit different places to learn about Egypt. Some of them are close, and some of them are far away.

أنا أعيش في القاهرة مع عائلتي. نحن نحب أن نسافر إلى أماكن أخرى في مصر. نذهب أحيانا بالسيارة. ونذهب أحيانا بالقطار. أنا أحب زيارة أماكن مختلفة للتعرف على مصر. بعضها قريب، وبعضها بعيد.

## Math: Graphs




A **bar graph** is a good way to show information. The **x-axis** is the line that goes across the bottom. It shows the different groups we are measuring. The **y-axis** is the line that goes up. It shows how much



or how many of a thing there is. A graph shows us how to compare things, for example, **distance**, **temperature** or **time**. We **label** the x-axis and the y-axis to show what we are comparing. or how many of a thing there is. A graph shows us how to compare

يعد الرسم البياني الشريطي طريقة جيدة لعرض المعلومات. المحور السيني هو الخط الذي يمر في الأسفل. إنه يوضح المجموعات المختلفة التي نقيسها. المحور ص هو الخط الذي يرتفع لأعلى. إنه يظهر مقدار أو عدد الأشياء الموجودة. يوضح لنا الرسم البياني كيفية مقارنة الأشياء، على سبيل المثال، المسافة أو درجة الحرارة أو الوقت. نقوم بتسمية المحور السيني والمحور الصادي لإظهار ما نقارنه.




**Note the following questions and answers:**

**لاحظ الأسئلة والأجوبة التالية:**

**How far ...?** كم المسافة ...؟

- How far is it from Cairo to Alexandria?

كم المسافة من القاهرة إلى الإسكندرية؟

- It's about 200 km. إنها حوالي 200 كيلو متر.

**Which ...?** أي (للتخيير بين شيئين) ...؟

- Which is farther from Cairo – Hurghada or Aswan?

أيهما أبعد من القاهرة – الغردقة أم أسوان؟

- Aswan. أسوان.





## Exercises on Lessons 11-12

### 1 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

I live in Cairo with my family. We like to travel to other places in Egypt. Sometimes we go by car. Sometimes we go by train. I like to visit different places to learn about Egypt. Some of them are close, and some of them are far away.

1. I live in Giza with my family. ( )
2. We like to travel to other places in Egypt. ( )
3. I like to visit different places to learn about Egypt. ( )
4. Some of them are close, and some of them are far away. ( )

### 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. to Alexandria - it - is - How far - from Cairo?
   ................................................................?
2. car - by - Sometimes - go - we.
   ................................................................
3. different places - like - I - to visit.
   ................................................................

### 3 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. i live in cairo with my family ..............................
2. how far is it from cairo to luxor ..............................
3. we like to travel to different places in egypt ..............................

### 4 Copy the following sentence:



How far is it from Cairo to Luxor?

................................................................

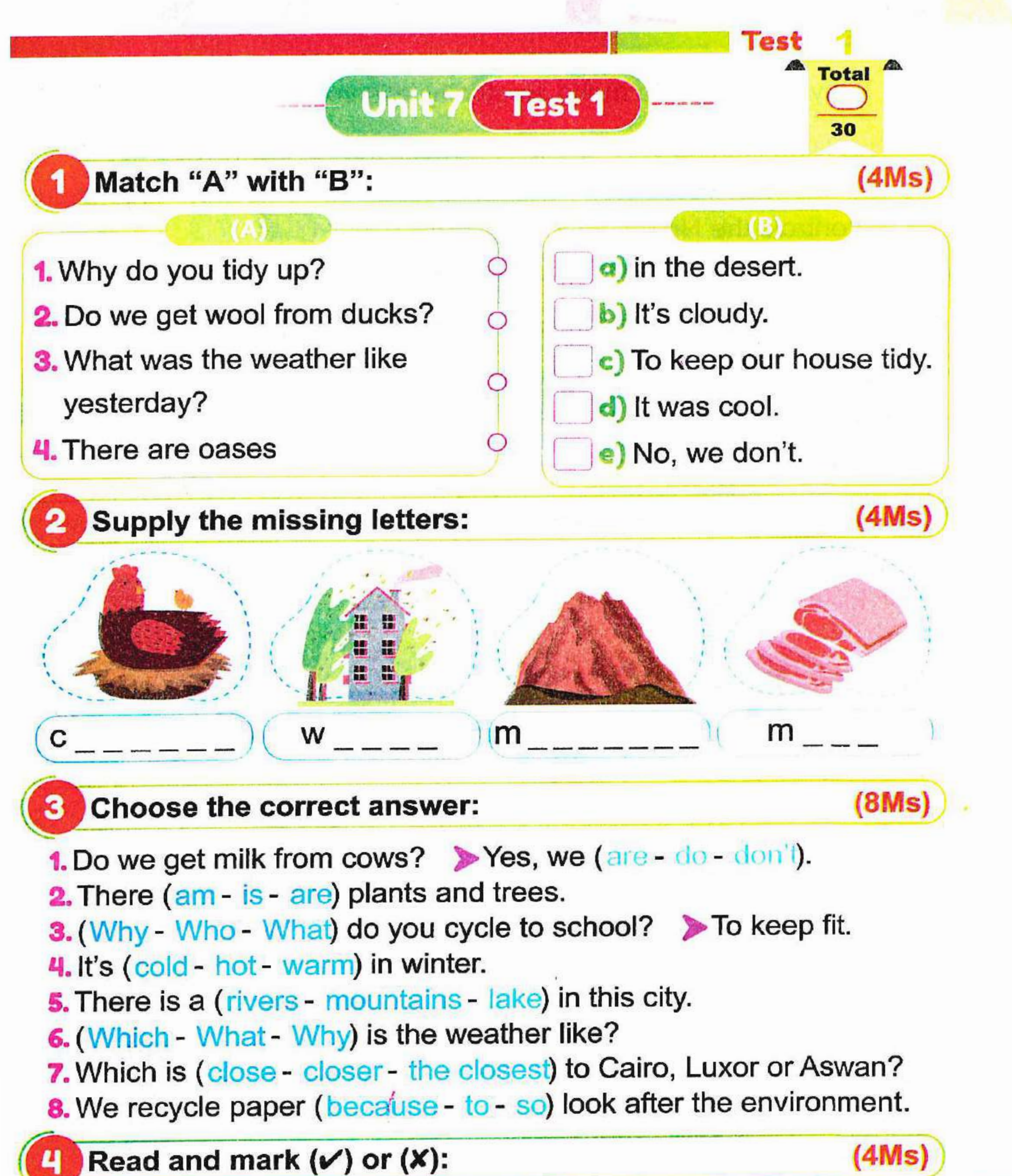
## Unit 7 Test 1

Total ___ / 30

### 1 Match "A" with "B": (4Ms)

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. Why do you tidy up? | a) in the desert. |
| 2. Do we get wool from ducks? | b) It's cloudy. |
| 3. What was the weather like yesterday? | c) To keep our house tidy. |
| 4. There are oases | d) It was cool. |
| | e) No, we don't. |

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)



c _ _ _ _ _ _ _ w _ _ _ _ m _ _ _ _ _ _ _ m _ _ _

### 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. Do we get milk from cows? ➤ Yes, we (are - do - don't).
2. There (am - is - are) plants and trees.
3. (Why - Who - What) do you cycle to school? ➤ To keep fit.
4. It's (cold - hot - warm) in winter.
5. There is a (rivers - mountains - lake) in this city.
6. (Which - What - Why) is the weather like?
7. Which is (close - closer - the closest) to Cairo, Luxor or Aswan?
8. We recycle paper (because - to - so) look after the environment.

### 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

The High Dam is very big. It is about 48 years old. People built it to control the Nile River.

They also use it to make electricity. It is very important.

1. The High Dam is very small. ( )
2. It's about 84 years old. ( )
3. It controls the Nile River. ( )
4. We use the High Dam to make water. ( )

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)**

1. today - What's - like - the weather? ............................................ ?
2. in the east - The - Sea - Red - is. ............................................ .
3. from sand - make glass - How - you - do? ............................................ ?

**6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)**

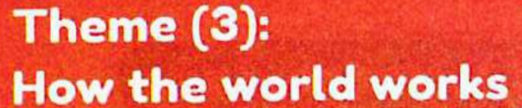
1. It's ............................................ .
2. We get .................... from cows.
3. There are ............................................ .
4. They sell .................... in Damietta.

**7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)**



These are traditional products in Egypt.

.....................................................................................







# Don't get lost!

# لا تضل الطريق!



## Objectives

**Vocabulary**

**Transportation:** airplane, boat, car, ferry, taxi, train; airport, gas station, highway, port, railroad, station

**Directions:** between, across from, next to, Go straight! Turn left. Turn right.

**Transportation jobs:** conductor, co-pilot, flight attendant, pilot, mechanic, railroad engineer, station master, ticket agent

**Language**

- Where would you like to go?
- I would like to go to (Cairo), please.
- Can I buy a ticket here?
- Yes, you can.
- Give it to your dad, please!

**Reading** - A train schedule

**Phonics** **fr:** frog, Fred **pr:** press, present **tr:** truck, train

**Life skills**

**Problem solving**

**Communication:** giving directions; buying a ticket

**Values** **Independence**

**Issues and challenges**

**Community participation:** recognizing the importance of good time keeping

**Integrated cross-curriculum topics**

**Social Studies:** using transportation; buying a ticket; transportation jobs

**Math:** Telling the time with the 12-hour clock

## Lessons 1-2 Don't get lost! & Vocabulary




### Read and repeat

#### Places



station
محطة (قطار)



gas station
محطة بنزين (وقود)


airport
ميناء جوي - مطار


port
ميناء بحري


museum
متحف



restaurant
مطعم



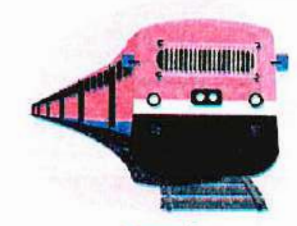
café
مقهى



store
متجر - محل

#### Transportation


airplane


train


boat


ferry
عبّارة - معدّية


car
سيارة



taxi
تاكسي - سيّارة أجرة

## Ways

|  |  |  |  |
|---|---|---|---|
| **railroad** | **highway** | **sky** | **water** |
| سكة حديد (للقطارات) | طريق سريع (للسيارات) | سماء (للطائرات) | مياه (للسفن) |

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Go straight.** | اتجه مباشرة للأمام | **supermarket** | سوبر ماركت |
| **Turn right.** | اتجه يمينًا. | **library** | مكتبة |
| **Turn left.** | اتجه يسارًا. | **travel** | يسافر |
| **next to** | بجوار - بجانب | **Where** | أين |
| **stop** | يتوقف | **How** | كيف |



## Read and learn

### Don't get lost!








## Listen and read



### Vocabulary



A train stops at a station.

يتوقف القطار في المحطة.



An airplane stops at an airport.

تتوقف الطائرة في المطار.



A car and a taxi stop at a gas station.

تتوقف السيارة والسيارة الأجرة في محطة الوقود.



A boat and a ferry stop at a port.

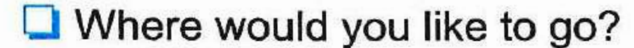
يتوقف القارب والعبّارة في الميناء.



## Language

**When you ask and answer about places you like to go:**

**عند السؤال والإجابة عن الأماكن التي ترغب في الذهاب إليها:**



- Where would you like to go? — أين تود أن تذهب؟
  - I would like to go to Aswan, please. — أود أن أذهب إلى أسوان، من فضلك.

## When you ask and answer about how to go to somewhere:

عند السؤال والإجابة عن كيفية الذهاب إلى مكان ما:

- How would you like to go to Cairo? كيف تود أن تذهب إلى القاهرة؟
  - I would like to go to Cairo by train. Trains travel on a railroad.
  
  أود أن أذهب إلى القاهرة بالقطار. تسير القطارات على السكك الحديدية.

- How would you like to go to Alexandria? كيف تود أن تذهب إلى الإسكندرية؟
  - I would like to go to Alex by car. Cars travel on a highway.
  
  أود أن أذهب إلى الإسكندرية بالسيارة. تسير السيارات على الطريق السريع.

- How would you like to go to Luxor? كيف تود أن تذهب إلى الأقصر؟
  - I would like to go to Luxor by boat. Boats travel in water.
  
  أود أن أذهب إلى الأقصر بالقارب. تبحرالقوارب في الماء.

- How would you like to go to Aswan? كيف تود أن تذهب إلى أسوان؟
  - I would like to go to Aswan by airplane. Airplanes travel in the sky.
  
  أود أن أذهب إلى أسوان بالطائرة. تحلّق الطائرات في السماء.

**لاحظ أن:**

نستخدم حرف الجر **(by)** قبل وسائل المواصلات.

## Exercises on Lessons 1-2

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. Where would you like to go? | a) railroad. |
| 2. I would like to | b) by boat. |
| 3. How would you go to Cairo? | c) I would like to go to Luxor. |
| 4. I go to Aswan | d) go to Port Said. |
| | e) By car. |



## 2 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. An airplane stops at | a) a port. |
| 2. A car and a taxi stop at | b) sky. |
| 3. A train stops at | c) an airport. |
| 4. A ferry stops at | d) a station. |
| | e) a gas station. |

## 3 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. Trains travel on | a) By taxi. |
| 2. Cars travel on | b) the sky. |
| 3. Boats travel in | c) a railroad. |
| 4. Airplanes travel in | d) water. |
| | e) a highway. |

## 4 Supply the missing letters:

a _ _ _ _ _ _

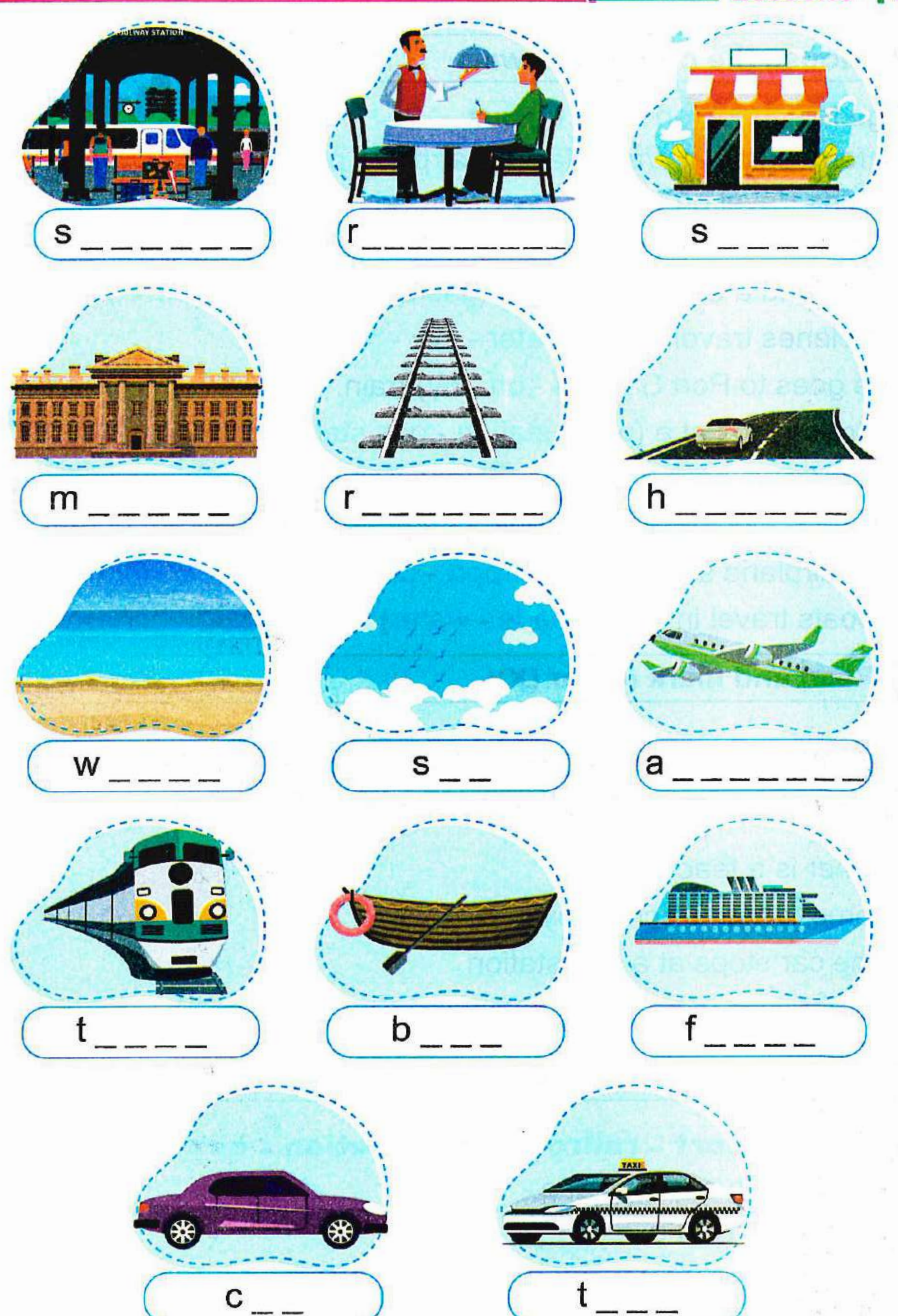
g _ _ s _ _ _ _ _ _

c _ _ _

s_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

l_ _ _ _ _ _

p _ _ _


RAILWAY STATION
s _ _ _ _ _ _
r _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
s _ _ _
m _ _ _ _ _
r _ _ _ _ _ _
h _ _ _ _ _ _
w _ _ _ _
s _ _
a _ _ _ _ _ _ _
t _ _ _ _
b _ _ _
f _ _ _ _
c _ _
TAXI
t _ _ _

## 5 Choose the correct answer:

1. I go to school (on - by - in) bus.
2. A ferry stops at a/an (station - airport - port).
3. Trains travel on a (highway - railroad - water).
4. (Where - How - Who) would you like to go? ➤ To Cairo.
5. A car and a taxi stop at a/an (gas station - port - airport).
6. Airplanes travel in the (water - sky - road).
7. He goes to Port Said (in - on - by) train.
8. A train stops at a (port - station - gas station).
9. Cars travel on a (highway - railroad - sky).
10. (Who - Where - How) would you go to Luxor? ➤ By boat.
11. An airplane stops at an (airport - port - station).
12. Boats travel in (sky - roads - water).

## 6 Read and mark (✔) or (✘):

My name is Tamer. I'm in grade two. I live in Alexandria. I go to school by car. The car stops at a gas station. My father drives the car.

1. Tamer is a teacher. ( )
2. Tamer goes to school by bus. ( )
3. The car stops at a gas station. ( )
4. Tamer lives in a big city. ( )

## 7 Read and complete the sentences using the words from the box:




**(highway - port - railroad - gas station - airport - station)**

1. A taxi and a car stop at a .................... .
2. A boat stops at a .................... .
3. Trains travel on a .................... .
4. An airplane stops at an .................... .

5. A train stops at a .................................. .
6. Cars travel on a .................................. .

## 8 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. would - go - Where - you - to - like?
   ..................................................................................................?
2. like - Aswan - to - would - I - go - to.
   ..................................................................................................
3. you - How - Cairo - go - would - to?
   ..................................................................................................?
4. Port Said - I - by - to - go - ferry.
   ..................................................................................................

## 9 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. would you like to go to luxor
   ..................................................................................................
2. i would like to go to alexandria, please
   ..................................................................................................
3. where would you like to go
   ..................................................................................................
4. zeiad would like to go to cairo
   ..................................................................................................

## 10 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts:



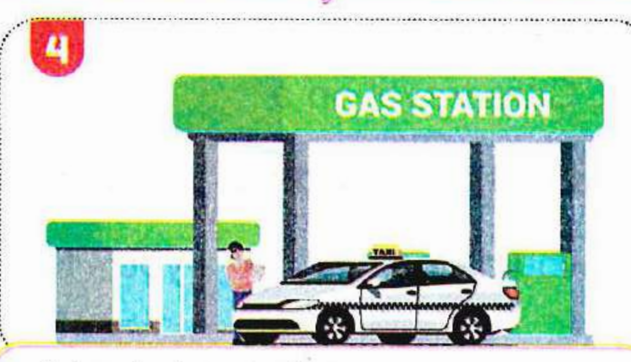
A train stops at a ........................ .




An airplane stops at an .............. .



A ferry stops at a .......................... .



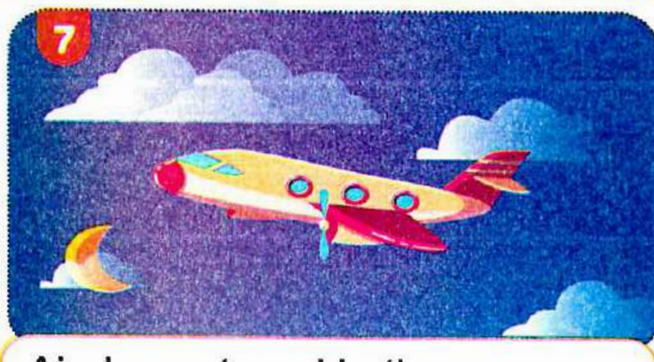

A taxi stops at a .......................... .



Trains travel on a .......................... .



Cars travel on a .......................... .



Airplanes travel in the ............... .



Boats travel in .......................... .

## 11 Copy the following sentence:



Don't get lost!

## Lesson 3 Reading: Transportation jobs



### Read and repeat



### Transportation jobs



**pilot**
طيار



**co-pilot**
مساعد طيار



**flight attendant**
مضيفة جوية



**mechanic**
ميكانيكي




**station master**
ناظر المحطة



**conductor**
محصل تذاكر (كمسري)



**ticket agent**
موظف حجز التذاكر



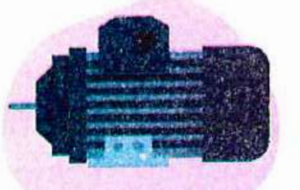
**railroad engineer**
سائق القطار



**passengers**
ركاب




**schedule - timetable**
جدول مواعيد



**engine**
محرك - موتور



**the fastest way**
أسرع طريقة



## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| types | أنواع - أصناف | times | أوقات |
| broken | مكسور | anything | أي شيء |
| transportation | النقل - المواصلات | everyone | كل واحد |

## Prepositions & Expressions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| get to | يصل إلى | on time | في الوقت المحدد |
| get on | يركب (وسيلة نقل) | in charge of | مسئول عن |
| get off | ينزل (وسيلة نقل) | on an airplane | على متن الطائرة |

# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| check | يفحص | checked |
| fix | يصلح | fixed |
| help | يساعد | helped |

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| need | يحتاج | needed |
| travel | يسافر | traveled |

## Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| tell | يخبر | told |
| drive | يقود | drove |
| sell | يبيع | sold |

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| fly | يطير | flew |
| get to | يصل إلى | got to |



## Read and learn





Airplanes are the fastest way to travel. A **pilot** flies a plane. A **co-pilot** helps the pilot. There are **flight attendants** on an airplane. They help the **passengers**.

الطائرات هي أسرع وسيلة للسفر. يقود الطيّار الطائرة. مساعد الطيار يساعد الطيار. يوجد مضيفات على متن الطائرة. إنهم يساعدون الركاب.



A train travels on a **railroad**. **Passengers** get on and off a train at a **station**.
A train needs to get to the station on time.
A **schedule** tells passengers the times of the trains.

يسافر القطار على خط سكة حديد. يصعد الركاب وينزلون من القطار في المحطة. يحتاج القطار للوصول إلى المحطة في الوقت المحدد. هناك جدول زمني يخبر الركاب بمواعيد القطارات.



A **railroad engineer** drives the train. A **station master** helps people at the station. A **conductor** travels on the train and checks the passengers' tickets.

سائق القطار يقود القطار. يساعد مدير المحطة الأشخاص في المحطة. يسافر محصل التذاكر في القطار ويتحقق من تذاكر الركاب.






A **mechanic** checks the engines and fixes anything that is broken. You need a **ticket** to travel on some types of transportation. A **ticket agent** sells tickets to the passengers.

يفحص الميكانيكي المحركات ويصلح أي شيء مكسور. أنت تحتاج إلى تذكرة للسفر في بعض وسائل المواصلات. يقوم موظف حجز التذاكر ببيع التذاكر للركاب.



## Listen and read






You need a ticket to travel on a train, airplane, ferry and bus.

أنت تحتاج إلى تذكرة للسفر في القطار، والطائرة، والعبّارة، والحافلة.



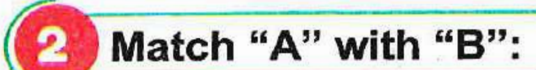
## Exercises on Lesson 3

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. A pilot | a) sells tickets. |
| 2. A station master | b) flies a plane. |
| 3. A conductor | c) checks the engines. |
| 4. A ticket agent | d) checks the passengers' tickets. |
| | e) helps people at the station. |









## 2 Match "A" with "B":

**(A)**

1. A mechanic
2. A railroad engineer
3. A co-pilot
4. Flight attendants

**(B)**

- [ ] a) help drivers.
- [ ] b) help the passengers on a plane.
- [ ] c) checks the engines.
- [ ] d) drives the train.
- [ ] e) helps the pilot.

## 3 Match "A" with "B":

**(A)**

1. A schedule tells
2. A station master is
3. Passengers
4. Train times are on a

**(B)**

- [ ] a) timetable.
- [ ] b) get on and off a train.
- [ ] c) the times of the trains.
- [ ] d) fixes anything.
- [ ] e) in charge of the station.

## 4 Supply the missing letters:




s _ _ _ _ _ _ m _ _ _ _ _



p _ _ _ _



p _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _



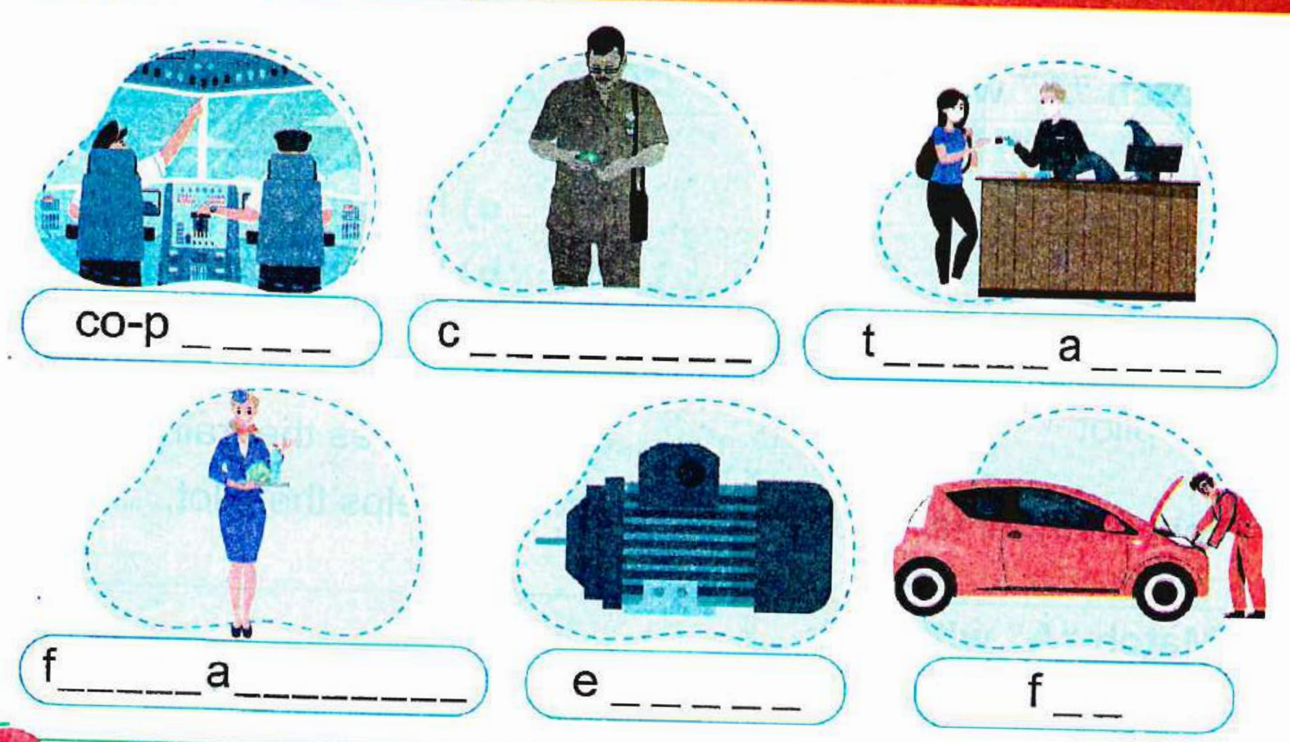
m _ _ _ _ _ _ _




s _ _ _ _ _ _ _



r _ _ _ _ _ _ _ e _ _ _ _ _ _ _




## 5 Choose the correct answer:

1. A (railroad engineer - mechanic - pilot) flies a plane.
2. A (ticket agent - station master - co-pilot) sells tickets to passenger.
3. A (mechanic - conductor - flight attendant) travels on the train and checks the passengers' tickets.
4. (Passengers - Pilots - Ticket agents) get on and off a train at a station.
5. A (station master - co-pilot - mechanic) checks the engines and fixes anything that is broken.
6. A (co-pilot - passenger - ticket agent) helps the pilot.
7. A (clock - notebook - schedule) tells passengers the times of the trains.
8. A (railroad engineer - station master - passenger) helps people at the station.
9. A (flight attendant - ticket agent - co-pilot) helps passengers on a plane.
10. A (conductor - railroad engineer - station master) drives the train.

## 6 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

A train travels on a railroad. Passengers get on and off a train at a station. A train needs to get to the station on time. A schedule tells passengers the times of the trains.

A railroad engineer drives the train. A station master helps people at the station. A conductor travels on the train and checks the passengers' tickets.

1. Passengers get on and off a train at a station. ( )
2. A clock tells passengers the times of the trains. ( )
3. A conductor drives the train. ( )
4. A station master helps people at the station. ( )

## 7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. railroad - a - A train - on - travels.
   ............................................................ .
2. plane - a - flies - A pilot.
   ............................................................ .
3. times - Train - are - a schedule - on.
   ............................................................ .
4. ticket agent - tickets - A - sells.
   ............................................................ .

## 12 Copy the following sentence:



# Lessons 4-5 Can I buy a ticket here? & Issues



## Read and repeat






**platform**
رصيف محطة القطار



**adult ticket**
تذكرة البالغين



**miss**
يفقد - يفوته




**pound**
جنيه

### Sentences & Expressions

| | |
|---|---|
| Can I help you? | هل يمكنني مساعدتك؟ |
| How many people? | كم عدد الناس؟ |
| Here you are. | تفضل. |
| Here's .................... . | ها هو .................... . |
| in ten minutes | خلال عشر دقائق |
| ten minutes ago | منذ عشر دقائق مضت |
| I missed the train. | لقد فاتني القطار. |
| Have a good trip. | أتمنى لكم رحلة جيدة. |
| Everyone is here. | الجميع هنا. |
| We can start. | نستطيع أن نبدأ. |
| I need to be on time for .......... | أحتاج أن أكون في الوقت المحدد لـ ..... |
| on holiday | في إجازة |

# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| miss | يفقد - يفوته | missed | فقدَ - فاته |
| start | يبدأ | started | بدأ |
| arrive | يصل | arrived | وصلَ |

## Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| lose | يفقد (يضيع منه شيء) | lost | فقدَ |
| leave | يغادر - يترك | left | غادر - ترك |
| give | يعطي | gave | أعطى |



## Read and learn



### Can I buy a ticket here?

**Ticket agent** : Hello! Can I help you?

**Laila** : We would like to go to Giza, please.

**Ticket agent** : You need to buy a ticket for the train.

**Laila** : Can I buy a ticket here?

**Ticket agent** : Yes, you can. How many people are traveling?

**Laila** : One **adult** and one child, please.



**Ticket agent** : That will be 160 pounds, please.

**Laila** : Here you are.

**Ticket agent** : Thank you. Here is your ticket. This is the **adult ticket**. Give it to your dad, please.

**Laila** : Which **platform** do we need to go to?

**Ticket agent** : You need to go to platform 4. The train arrives there in ten minutes.

**Laila** : Where is platform 4?

**Ticket agent** : Go straight. Then turn right.

**Laila** : Thank you.

**Ticket agent** : Have a good trip!

**موظف حجز التذاكر** : مرحبا! هل يمكنني مساعدتك؟

**ليلى** : نود أن نذهب إلى الجيزة، من فضلك.

**موظف حجز التذاكر** : أنتِ تحتاجين إلى شراء تذكرة قطار.

**ليلى** : هل يمكنني شراء تذكرة من هنا؟

**موظف حجز التذاكر** : نعم، يمكنك. كم عدد المسافرين؟

**ليلى** : شخص بالغ وطفل واحد، من فضلك.

**موظف حجز التذاكر** : سيكون ذلك 160 جنيها، من فضلك.

**ليلى** : تفضل.

**موظف حجز التذاكر** : شكرًا. ها هي تذكرتك.هذه هي تذكرة البالغ. أعطها لوالدك، من فضلك.

**ليلى** : ما هو الرصيف الذي نحتاج إلى الذهاب إليه؟

**موظف حجز التذاكر** : تحتاجون إلى الذهاب إلى الرصيف رقم 4 يصل القطار إلى هناك في خلال عشر دقائق.

**ليلى** : أين الرصيف رقم 4؟

**موظف حجز التذاكر** : اتجهي مباشرة للأمام. ثم انعطفي يمينًا.

**ليلى** : شكرًا لك.

**موظف حجز التذاكر** : أتمنى لكم رحلة سعيدة!

## Issues: The importance of good timekeeping

1

The train left ten minutes ago!
لقد غادر القطار منذ عشر دقائق!

Oh no! I missed the train!
أوه لا! لقد فاتني القطار!

2

Well done! Everyone is here.
أحسنتم! الجميع هنا.

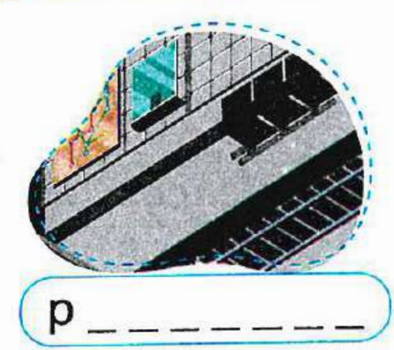


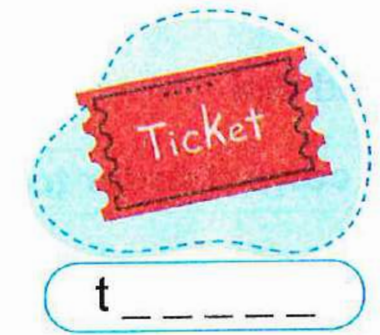
We can start!
نستطيع أن نبدأ!



## Exercises on Lessons 4-5

### 1 Supply the missing letters:









p _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

t _ _ _ _ _

p _ _ _ _

### 2 Read and write the letter:




A. One adult and one child, please.
B. We would like to go to Luxor, please.
C. You need to go to platform 3.
D. Can I buy a ticket here?
E. Go straight on. Then turn right.
F. This is the adult ticket. Give it to your dad, please.

Ticket agent: Hello! Can I help you?

Youssef : ❶ B. We would like to go to Luxor, please.

Ticket agent: You need to buy a ticket for the train.

Youssef : ❷ .................................................... .

Ticket agent: Yes, you can. How many people are traveling?

Youssef : ❸ .................................................... .

Ticket agent: That will be 180 pounds, please.

Youssef : Here you are.

Ticket agent: Thank you. Here is your ticket. ❹ ........................ .

Youssef : Which platform do we need to go to?

Ticket agent: ❺ ........................................ . The train stops there in 15 minutes.

Youssef : Where is platform 3?

Ticket agent: ❻ .................................................... .

Youssef : Thank you.

Ticket agent: Have a good trip!

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. traveling - people - How many - are? ........................................ ?
2. would - to go - We - like - to Giza. ........................................ .
3. platform - Where - 4 - is? ........................................ ?
4. adult - the - ticket - is - This. ........................................ .

## 4 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. which platform do we need to go to ........................................
2. dad and youssef are traveling to giza ........................................
3. is laila buying three tickets ........................................

## Lessons 6-7 Connect with Math & Reading





### Read and repeat



**hour**
ساعة (60 دقيقة)



**clock**
منبه - ساعة حائط



**minute hand**
عقرب الدقائق



**hour hand**
عقرب الساعات



**go around**
يلف - يدور



**quarter**
ربع



**half**
نصف

### Sentences & Expressions

| | |
|---|---|
| **What time is it now?** | ما الوقت الآن؟ كم الساعة الآن؟ |
| **What time do you go home?** | متى تعود للبيت؟ |
| **the earliest train** | أول قطار |
| **the latest train** | آخر قطار |
| **catch the train** | يلحق بالقطار |
| **The train leaves at ten o'clock.** | يغادر القطار في تمام الساعة العاشرة. |
| **There are four trains in total.** | يبلغ إجمالي عدد القطارات أربعة. |
| **wait for** | ينتظر (شخصًا - شيئًا) |
| **morning (5 am to 12 pm)** | الصباح |
| **noon (12 pm)** | الظهيرة |



| | |
|---|---|
| **afternoon (12 pm to 5 pm)** | بعد الظهر |
| **midday (12 pm)** | منتصف النهار |
| **midnight (12 am)** | منتصف الليل |



## Read and learn



### Reading

**Alexandria → Giza**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Alexandria** | 5:45 | 7:15 | 7:45 | |
| **Cairo** | 10:30 | 11:00 | 12:30 | |
| **Giza** | 9:15 | 10:50 | 11:20 | 12:50 |

1. There are four trains in total.
يبلغ إجمالي عدد القطارات أربعة.
2. Three trains start from Alexandria.
ثلاثة قطارات تبدأ من الإسكندرية.
3. All the trains go to Giza.
تذهب جميع القطارات إلى الجيزة.
4. Only three trains stop in Cairo.
تتوقف ثلاثة قطارات فقط في القاهرة.
5. It takes 20 minutes to travel from Cairo to Giza.
يستغرق السفر من القاهرة إلى الجيزة 20 دقيقة.

**Giza → Alexandria**

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Giza** | 2:45 | 5:55 | 8:45 | 9:05 |
| **Cairo** | 3:05 | 6:15 | 9:00 | |
| **Alexandria** | 6:20 | 9:10 | 12:20 | |

1. The earliest train leaves Giza at 2:45.
يغادر أول قطار الجيزة في الساعة 2:45.
2. The latest train leaves Giza at 9:05.
يغادر آخر قطار الجيزة في الساعة 9:05.
3. If you want to get to Cairo by 9:00 am you need to catch the 8:45 train from Giza.
إذا كنت ترغب في الوصول إلى القاهرة بحلول الساعة 9:00 صباحًا، فأنت بحاجة إلى ركوب قطار 8:45 من الجيزة.
4. The 9:05 train from Giza doesn't stop in Cairo.
قطار 9:05 من الجيزة لا يتوقف في القاهرة.



## Telling the time



There are 12 hours on a clock. An hour has 60 minutes. The minute hand on the clock goes around once in an hour.

يوجد 12 ساعة على مدار الساعة. الساعة بها 60 دقيقة. يدور عقرب الدقائق على مدار الساعة مرة واحدة في الساعة.

## Language

### Asking and telling the time السؤال والإخبار عن الوقت

- What's the time? كم الساعة؟ / ما الوقت؟
  - It's ......الساعة...... .
- What time is it now? كم الساعة الآن؟ / ما الوقت الآن؟
  - It's ......الساعة...... .

- **It's seven o'clock.**
- **It's seven fifteen.**
- **It's seven forty.**



- **It's seven oh five.**



- **It's seven twenty-five.**



- **It's seven fifty-five.**

The long hand (for minutes)
العقرب الطويل
(عقرب الدقائق)

The short hand (for hours)
العقرب القصير
(عقرب الساعات)

o'clock

five

ten

quarter past
fifteen

twenty

twenty-five

half past
thirty

thirty-five

forty

quarter to
forty-five

fifty

fifty-five







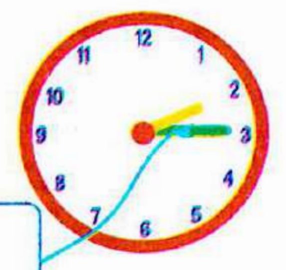


It's two thirty.
إنها الثانية وثلاثون دقيقة.

It's half past two.
إنها الثانية والنصف.

It's two fifteen.
إنها الثانية وخمسة عشر دقيقة.



It's quarter past two.
إنها الثانية والربع.




**It's two five.**
إنها الثانية وخمس دقائق.

**It's two oh five.**
إنها الثانية وخمس دقائق.

## لاحظ أن:

(**oh**) هي الحرف (**o**) وتشير إلى (**'zero '0**') ويمكن أن نقول (**It's seven five.**) بدون (**oh**) وتكون الجملة صحيحة أيضًا.



## Exercises on Lessons 6-7

### 1 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

(**minutes** - **hand** - **hours**)

There are 12 ❶ .................. on a clock. An hour has 60 ❷ .................. . The minute ❸ .......................... on the clock goes around once in an hour.

### 2 What time is it?

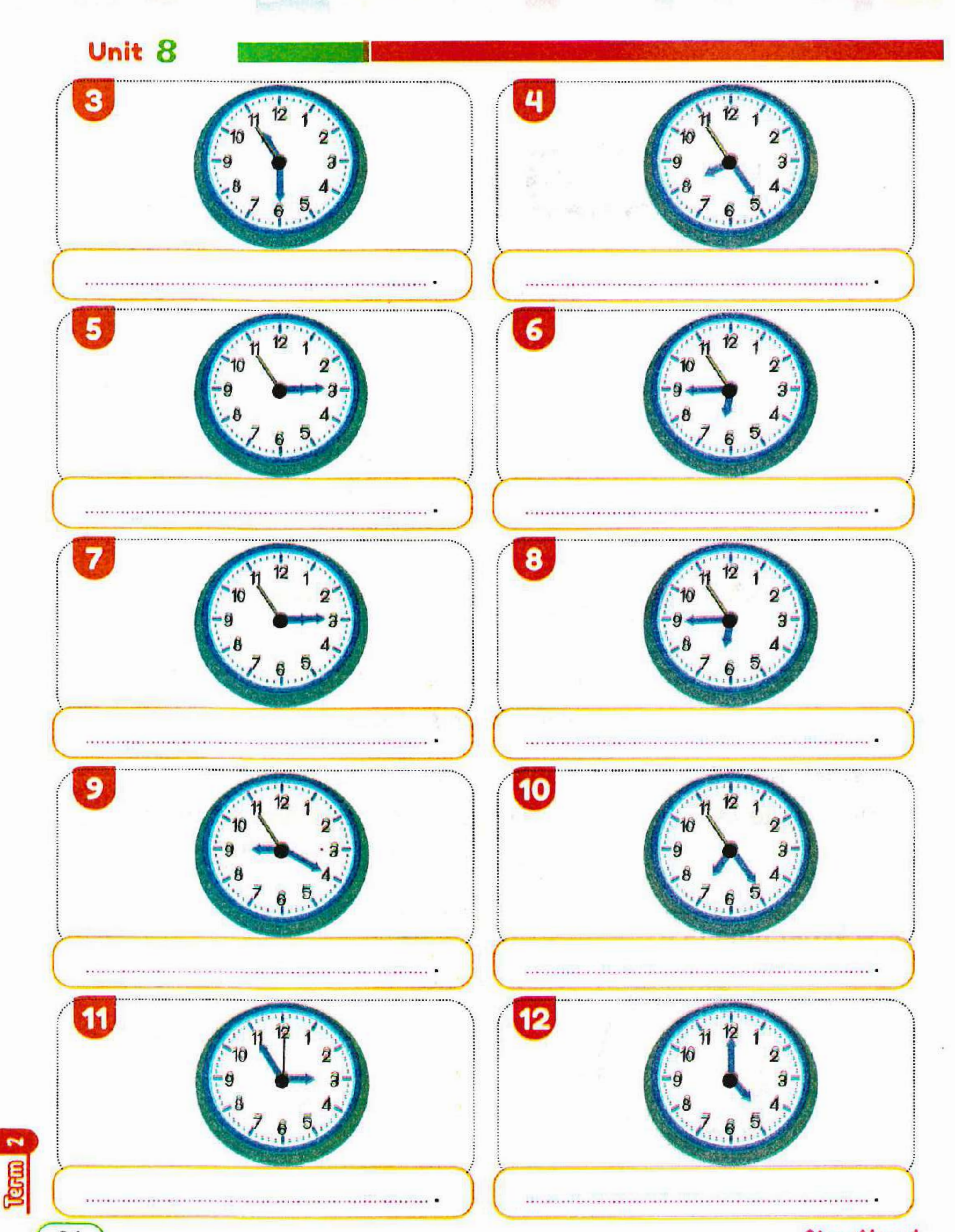



..................................................................... .

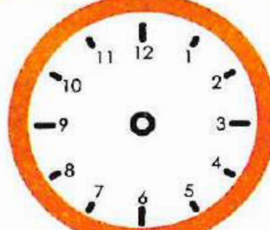



..................................................................... .

Term 2


3
4
5
6
7
8
9
10
11
12

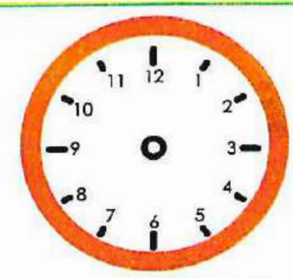
## 3 Draw the hands of the clocks:




It's five ten.



It's twelve forty.

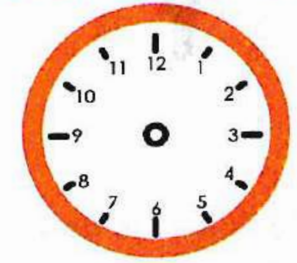


It's one fifty-five.

It's six thirty.



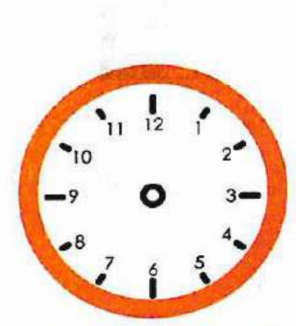

It's eight twenty-five.



It's three twenty.

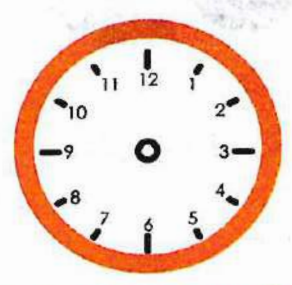


It's eleven five.



It's ten thirty-five.

It's two fifteen.



It's four forty-five.

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. six - twenty-five - It's. ................................................ .
2. time - What - now - it - is? ................................................ ?
3. to Luxor - travels - Salma - from Aswan. ................................................ .
4. two - It's - past - half. ................................................ .

## 5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. faisal travels from aswan to cairo ................................................
2. what time does heba go home ................................................
3. dina wants to travel from alexandria to giza ................................................

Term 2

# Lessons 8-9-10 Giving directions & Values



## Read and repeat



### Giving directions



**Go straight.**
اتجه مباشرة للأمام.



**Turn right.**
اتجه يمينًا.



**Turn left.**
اتجه يسارًا.



**between**
بين



**on your right**
على يمينك



**on your left**
على يسارك



**next to**
بجوار - بجانب



**across from**
مقابل - على الجهة الأخرى

### Places



**castle**
قلعة




**shop**
محل




**hotel**
فندق




**garage**
جراج ورشة تصليح سيارات



**park**
منتزه - حديقة عامة



**market**
سوق




**school**
مدرسة




**hospital**
مستشفى








| office | fire station | sports center | beach |
|---|---|---|---|
| مكتب | محطة إطفاء | مركز رياضي | شاطيء |



## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **summer holiday** | إجازة صيفية | **list of things** | قائمة من الأشياء |
| **vacation** | إجازة | **button** | زِر |
| **organized** | منظّم | **remember** | يتذكر |
| **passport** | جواز سفر | **map** | خريطة |
| **money** | نقود - مال | **swimming suit** | زي السباحة (مايوه) |



## Read and learn



### Values

You need to be organized when you travel. You can make a list of things you need to remember.

يجب أن تكون منظمًا عند السفر. يمكنك عمل قائمة بالأشياء التي تحتاج إلى تذكرها.





I need to remember money, a passport, a ticket and a map.

أحتاج أن أتذكر المال وجواز السفر والتذكرة والخريطة.





## Language

**When you ask and answer about how to go to somewhere:**
**عند السؤال والإجابة عن كيفية الذهاب إلى مكان ما:**

- Where's the market? أين السوق؟
  - Go straight. It's across from the school.
  اتجه مباشرة للأمام. إنه على الجانب الآخر من المدرسة.
- Where's the fire station? أين محطة الإطفاء؟
  - Turn right. It's between the café and the park.
  انعطف يمينًا. إنها بين المقهى والحديقة.
- Where's the hospital, please? أين المستشفى، من فضلك؟
- Turn left. It's next to the hotel. انعطف يسارًا. إنها بجوار الفندق.

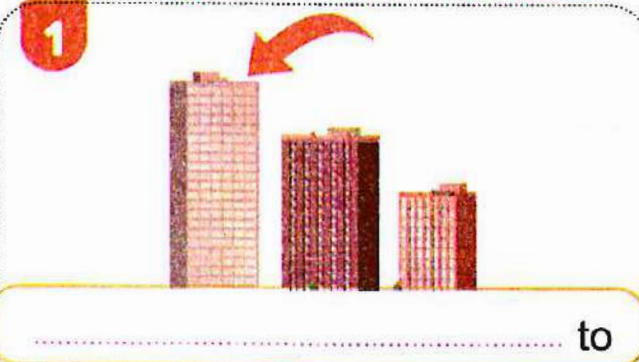


## Exercises on Lessons 8-9-10

**1 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:**



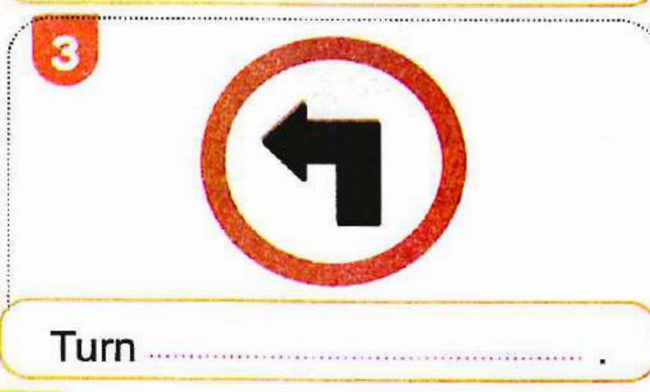
(right - next - across - straight - left - between)

1. 

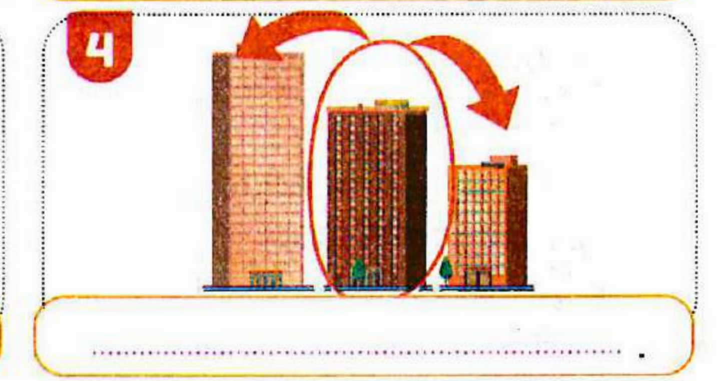
................................ to

2. 

................................ from.

3. 

Turn ................................ .

4. 

................................ .



Turn ............................................... .



Go ............................................... .

## 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

(straight - go - across - next)

A: I would like to ❶ ........................ to the school, please.

B: Go ❷ .................... . It is ❸ .................. to the shop and ❹ .................. from the castle.

## 3 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

(between - Where - left)

A: ❶ .......................... is the museum?

B: Turn ❷ ...................... . It is ❸ ...................... to the hotel and the school.

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. is - across - The office - the hotel - from. ............................................ .
2. the beach - go - always - We - to. ............................................ .
3. hospital - Where - the - is? ............................................ ?
4. is - the café - The supermarket - to - next. ............................................ .

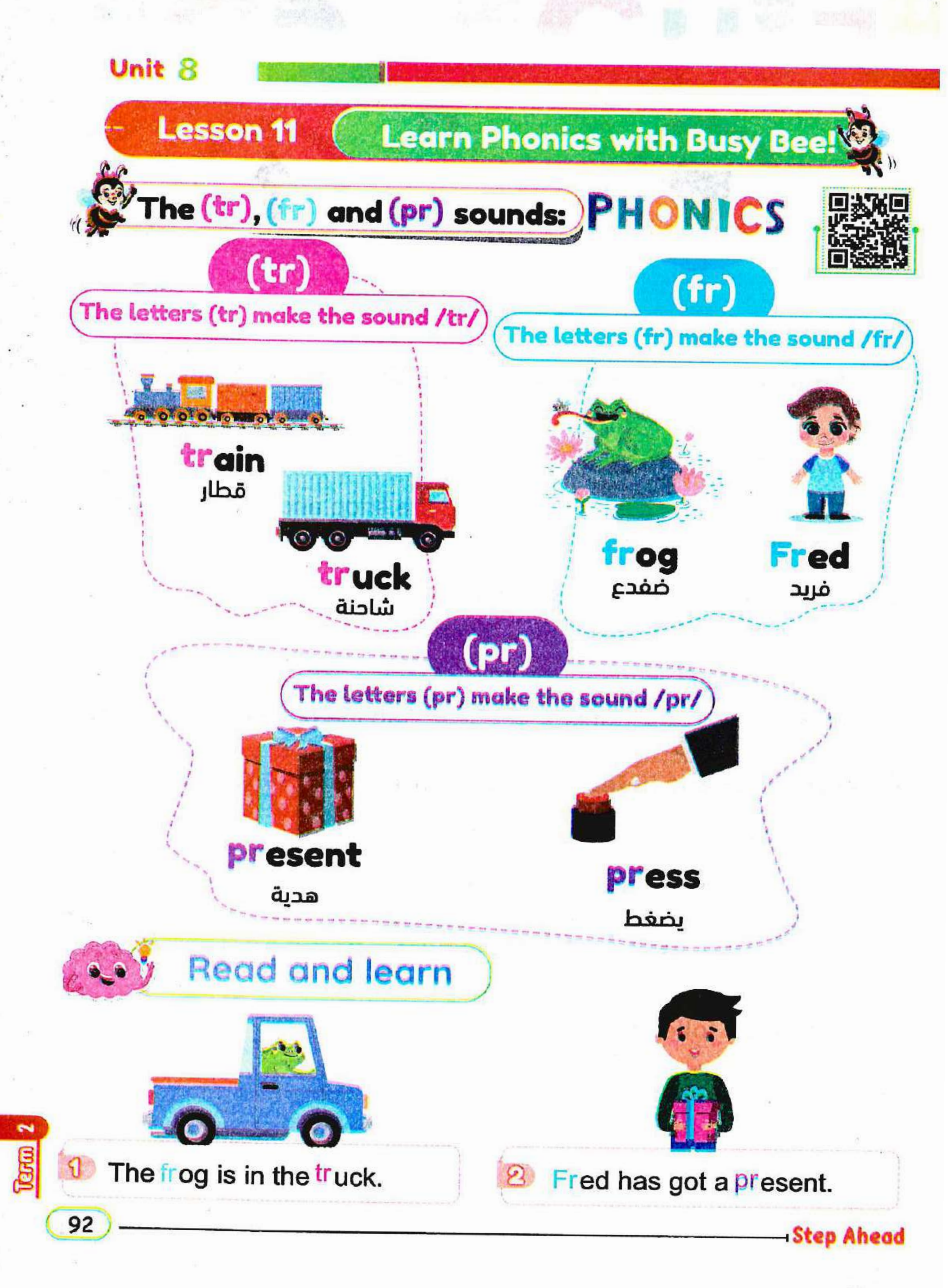
## 5 Copy the following sentence:






# Lesson 11 Learn Phonics with Busy Bee!

## The (tr), (fr) and (pr) sounds: PHONICS



### (tr)

The letters (tr) make the sound /tr/

train
قطار

truck
شاحنة

### (fr)

The letters (fr) make the sound /fr/

frog
ضفدع

Fred
فريد

### (pr)

The letters (pr) make the sound /pr/

present
هدية

press
يضغط

## Read and learn

1. The frog is in the truck.
2. Fred has got a present.



# Exercises on Lesson 11

## 1 Complete the words with (tr), (fr) or (pr):


Activity Book

① 

My name is _ _ ed.

② 

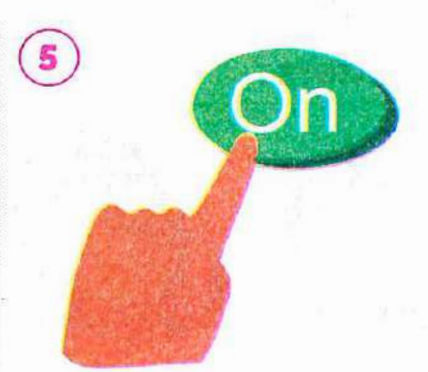
It's a _ _ og.

③  

Look at the _ _ uck.

④  

I like my _ _ esent.

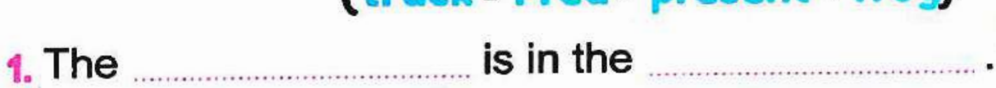
⑤ 


_ _ ess a button.

⑥  

I've got a toy _ _ ain.

## 2 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:



(truck - Fred - present - frog)



1. The .................................... is in the .................................... .
2. .................................... has got a .................................... .

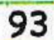
## 3 Copy the following sentence:



I like my present.

..................................................................................................







Test 2

## Unit 8 Test 2




### 1 Match "A" with "B": (4Ms)

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. Where's the hospital? | a) I would like to go to the park. |
| 2. What time is it? | b) I need my school bag. |
| 3. What do you need? | c) It's opposite the school. |
| 4. Where would you like to go? | d) He's a co-pilot. |
| | e) It's ten twenty-five. |

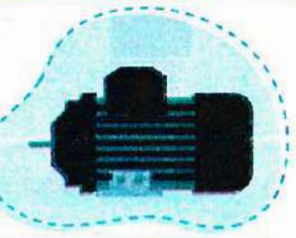
### 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)











a _ _ _ _ _ _ s _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ p _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ e _ _ _ _ _ _

### 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. A ferry stops at a (station - port - airport).
2. I go to Aswan (by - in - on) airplane.
3. A (pilot - station master - railroad engineer) drives the train.
4. The train leaves (in - at - on) five twenty.
5. A flight attendant helps (pilots - co-pilots - passengers) on the plane.
6. (Where - How - What) would you go to Cairo? ➤ By car.
7. The (mechanic - conductor - ticket agent) fixes broken cars.
8. (Trains - Airplanes - Boats) are the fastest way to travel.



## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

Airplanes are the fastest way to travel. A pilot flies a plane. A co-pilot helps the pilot. There are flight attendants on an airplane. They help the passengers.

1. Trains are the fastest way to travel. (   )
2. A pilot flies a kite. (   )
3. A flight attendant helps passengers. (   )
4. A co-pilot helps the pilot. (   )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. I - you - Can - help? ✓ ........................................?
2. the train - drives - engineer - A railroad. ✓ .........................................
3. do - What time - school - you - start? ✓ ........................................?

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1. It's ........................................ .
2. Cars stop at a ........................................ .
3. He's a ........................................ .
4. It's ........................................ .

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

I need a ticket for the bus.

........................................................................

Theme (3):
How the world works




# Along the Nile

# على امتداد النيل



## Objectives

**Vocabulary**

**Wild animals in Africa:** elephant, hippo, giraffe, rhino, trunk, tusk, horn, tongue, mouth
**Nile animals:** crocodile, perch, lizard, soft-shelled turtle, spiny eel, tilapia, reptile, fish
population, electricity, energy, recycling, dam, pollution, clean, dirty

**Language**

- I have to turn off the light.
- She had to draw a dinosaur for homework.
- Elephants run the least quickly.
- Do we have to recycle plastic?
- Giraffes run more quickly than hippos.
- I like elephants the best.

**Reading** - A poster about animals; a table with facts to compare

**Phonics**

**y, ies:** fly, flies; fry, fries; cry, cries; dry, dries; try, tries

**Life skills**

Collaboration

**Values**

Cooperation and participation

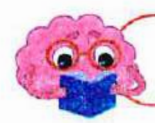
**Issues and challenges**

Awareness of rights and duties
Environmental responsibility

**Integrated cross-curriculum topics**

**Social Studies:** saving water; keeping Egypt clean; conserving energy
**Math:** large numbers, to discuss population
**Art:** Egyptian animals in carpet patterns

# Lesson 1 Along the Nile & Language use



## Read and repeat



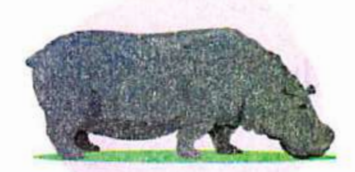
### Wild animals



**elephant**
فيل



**rhino**
وحيد القرن



**hippo**
فرس النهر



**horse**
حصان



**giraffe**
زرافة



**lion**
أسد

### Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| African animals | حيوانات إفريقية | have to | يجب أن - مضطر أن |
| find out about | يكتشف - يعرف عن | had to | كان يجب أن - كان مضطر أن |
| school club | النادي المدرسي | today | اليوم |
| Me too. | وأنا أيضًا. | yesterday | أمس |
| picture | صورة | last week | الأسبوع الماضي |



# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| visit | يزور | visited | زار |
| walk | يمشي | walked | مشى |
| like | يحب | liked | أحبّ |
| tidy | يرتب | tidied | رتّب |

## Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| say | يقول | said | قال |
| choose | يختار | chose | اختار |
| run | يجري | ran | جرى |
| draw | يرسم | drew | رسمَ |
| write | يكتب | wrote | كتبَ |
| do | يفعل | did | فعلَ |
| eat | يأكل | ate | أكلَ |

## African animals

- A hippo lives on land and in water.



يعيش فرس النهر على اليابسة وفي الماء.

- A giraffe has a long neck. It eats leaves.

الزرافة لها رقبة طويلة. وهي تأكل أوراق الأشجار.

- A rhino is big and it has short legs.



وحيد القرن كبير الحجم وله أرجل قصيرة.

- An elephant is big and gray. It has two big ears.



الفيل كبير الحجم ورمادي اللون. له أذنان كبيرتان.



## Read and learn

### Animals

1. I have to do my homework.
يجب أن أقوم بعمل واجبي المنزلي.

2. Me too. We have to find out about African animals.
وأنا أيضاً. علينا أن نعرف عن الحيوانات الأفريقية.

3. Yesterday, Miss Mona said we had to choose one animal — a hippo, rhino, elephant or giraffe.
بالأمس، قالت الأستاذة منى أنه كان علينا اختيار حيوان واحد _فرس النهر أو وحيد القرن أو الفيل أو الزرافة.

4. I like hippos best. They run more quickly than elephants.
أنا أحب أفراس النهر أكثر. فهم يركضون أسرع من الفيلة.

5. I like giraffes best. They are tall. They run the most quickly of all!
أنا أحب الزرافات أكثر. إنهم طوال القامة ويركضون أسرع من الجميع.



## Language



### The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

- يتكون الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.

**Examples:**

- I drew a picture of an elephant yesterday.
- He walked to the shop last week.
- She tidied her books yesterday.

- **We use it to express actions that happened in the past.**

يُستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي.

- **We sometimes use (yesterday - last week) with the past simple tense.**

أحيانًا نستخدم كلمات (**yesterday**) بمعنى (أمس) أو (**last week**) بمعنى (الأسبوع الماضي) مع زمن الماضي البسيط.

---

## have to يجب أن - had to كان يجب أن

### have to + inf. (المصدر)

- **تعبر عن الإلزام في المضارع ويأتي معها الضمائر**

**(I - We - They - You)**

**Examples:**

- I have to tidy my books today. يجب أن أرتب كتبي اليوم.
- I have to draw a picture today. يجب أن أرسم صورة اليوم.

### had to + inf. (المصدر)

- **تعبر عن الإلزام في الماضي وتأتي مع جميع الضمائر**

**(I - We - They - You - He - She - It)**

**Examples:**

- I had to walk to school last week.

كان يجب عليّ الذهاب إلى المدرسة ماشيًا الأسبوع الماضي.

- We had to choose one animal yesterday.

كان يجب علينا أن نختار حيوان واحد بالأمس.

## Asking and answering questions about preference.

السؤال والإجابة عن التفضيل.

- Which animal do you like best? — أي حيوان تحب أكثر؟
- I like the tiger best. — أنا أحب النمر أكثر.



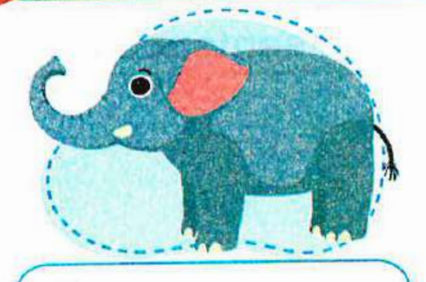


## Exercises on Lesson 1

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | | (B) |
|---|---|---|
| 1. I have to | ☐ | a) a picture of a lion today. |
| 2. I drew | ☐ | b) tidied my bedroom. |
| 3. I had to | ☐ | c) do my homework today. |
| 4. I draw | ☐ | d) go to the shops yesterday. |
| | ☐ | e) a picture of a hippo last week. |

### 2 Supply the missing letters:



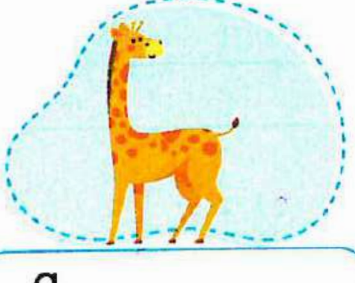
e _ _ _ _ _ _ _



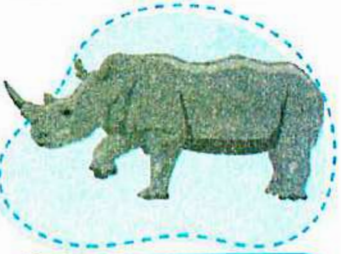
h _ _ _ _



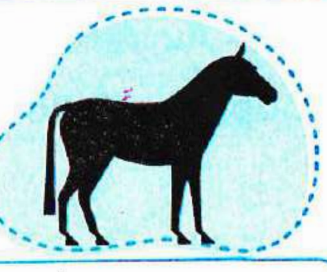
l _ _ _



g _ _ _ _ _ _



r _ _ _ _



h _ _ _ _

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

1. Dina (writes - wrote) about an elephant last week.
2. I (have to - had to) walk to school at 7:30 yesterday.
3. Today I (have to - has to) tidy my bedroom.
4. I (have to - has to) go to the school club today.
5. We (go - went) to the market yesterday.
6. I (visit - visited) my grandparents last week.
7. I (write - wrote) about a giraffe today.
8. I (do - did) my homework yesterday.
9. I had to (go - went) to bed early yesterday.
10. I (have to - has to) help my mom today.

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. A/An (horse - elephant - lion) is big and gray. It has two big ears.
2. A (giraffe - rhino - mouse) has a long neck. It eats leaves.
3. A (goat - hen - hippo) lives on land and in water.
4. The (rhino - giraffe - horse) is big. It has short legs.

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. have to - my homework - I - do. ✓ ........................................ .
2. best - I - giraffes - like. ✓ ........................................ .
3. has - two - An elephant - ears - big. ✓ ........................................ .
4. books - tidy - I - my - had to. ✓ ........................................ .
5. neck - A giraffe - a long - has. ✓ ........................................ .

## 6 Copy the following sentence:







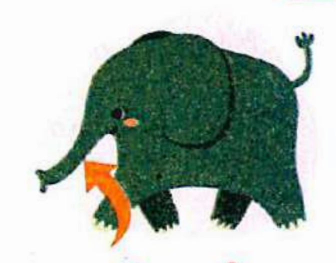
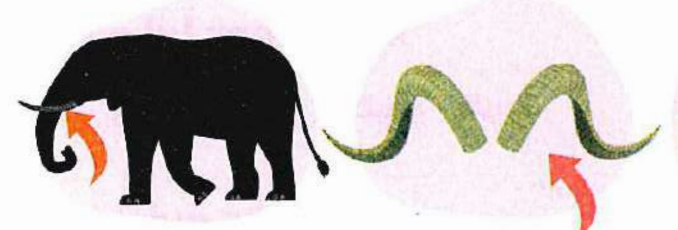

## Lessons 2-3-4 Reading & Language use & My favorite animal



### Read and repeat



### Animals body parts



| trunk | tusks | horn | long tongue |
|---|---|---|---|
| خرطوم الفيل | أنياب | قرن (حيوان) | لسان طويل |






| neck | mouth | nose | teeth |
|---|---|---|---|
| رقبة | فم | أنف | أسنان |






| wild animals | land animal | Africa | acacia tree |
|---|---|---|---|
| حيوانات برية | حيوان بري (يعيش على اليابسة) | قارة أفريقيا | شجرة السنط |

### Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| legs | أرجل | grass | حشائش - عشب |
| lion | أسد | plants | نباتات |
| horse | حصان | leaves | أوراق الشجر |
| good at | جيد في | grow up | ينمو - يكبر |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| African | أفريقي | ivory | عاج |
| healthy | بصحة جيدة | vet | طبيب بيطري |
| fat | سمين | faster than | أسرع من |
| heavy | ثقيل | strong | قوي |
| dangerous | خطير | near lakes | بالقرب من البحيرات |
| cute | لطيف - ظريف | in groups | في مجموعات |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| the biggest | الأكبر | less quickly | بسرعة أقل |
| the tallest | الأطول | the most quickly | الأكثر سرعة |
| more quickly | بسرعة أكثر | the least quickly | الأقل سرعة |



## Read and learn



### Wild animals in Africa

1




The elephant is the biggest **land animal**. It has a long **trunk**. It has **tusks** made of **ivory**. It grows up to three meters tall.

الفيل هو أكبر حيوان بري. لديه خرطوم طويل. وأنياب مصنوعة من العاج. يصل طوله إلى ثلاثة أمتار.

2

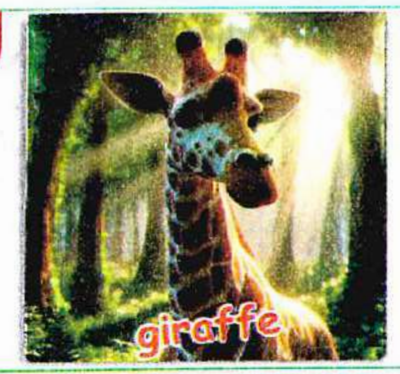



The **rhino** is the second biggest land animal. It has two big **horns** on its nose. It eats grass and plants.

وحيد القرن هو ثاني أكبر حيوان بري. له قرنان كبيران على أنفه. يأكل العشب والنباتات.



3




The giraffe is the tallest land animal. It grows up to five meters tall. It has a very long **tongue**. It eats the leaves of **acacia trees**.

الزرافة هي أطول حيوان بري. يصل طولها إلى خمسة أمتار. لها لسان طويل جدًا. وهي تأكل أوراق أشجار السنط.

4




The hippo has short legs. It has a very big mouth and big teeth. It is often in water. It is good at swimming.

فرس النهر لديه أرجل قصيرة. له فم كبير جدًا وأسنان كبيرة. غالبًا ما يكون في الماء. وهو جيد في السباحة.



Hippos run more quickly than rhinos. Elephants run less quickly than rhinos. Giraffes run the most quickly of them all. Elephants run the least quickly of them all.

تجري أفراس النهر بسرعة أكبر من وحيدي القرن. بينما تجري الفيلة بسرعة أقل من وحيدي القرن. وتجري الزرافات بسرعة أكبر منهم جميعًا. بينما تجري الفيلة بأقل سرعة منهم جميعًا.

## My favorite animal

My name is Aya. I love animals. I want to be a vet because vets help animals to be healthy.

أنا اسمي آية. وأنا أحب الحيوانات. أنا أريد أن أصبح طبيبة بيطرية لأن الأطباء البيطريين يساعدون الحيوانات لكي تكون بصحة جيدة.

My favorite animal is the hippo. They are big and fat, but they are very strong. I think they are cute, but they are dangerous, too. They can run faster than rhinos and they are very heavy.

حيواني المفضل هو فرس النهر. أفراس النهر كبيرة الحجم وسمينة، لكنها قوية جدًا. أنا أعتقد أنها لطيفة، لكنها خطيرة، أيضًا. يمكنها أن تجري أسرع من وحيدي القرن وهي ثقيلة جدًا.



Hippos live near lakes and rivers in Africa. They like swimming and eating plants. They usually live in groups. There can be 100 hippos in one group!

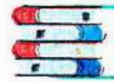
تعيش أفراس النهر بالقرب من البحيرات والأنهار في إفريقيا. فهي تحب السباحة وأكل النباتات. عادةً ما تعيش في مجموعات. يمكن أن يكون هناك 1000 من أفراس النهر في مجموعة واحدة!

My favorite pencil is red and it has pictures of hippos on it.

قلمي الرصاص المفضل لونه أحمر وعليه صور لأفراس النهر.



## Language



### Comparative and Superlative Adjectives المقارنة

- نقارن باستخدام الصفات مثل:

(fast - fat - strong - tall - big - long - short - heavy .....)

**Comparative degree:** **الدرجة الثانية من المقارنة:**

- عند المقارنة بين شخص وشخص أو حيوان وحيوان أو شيء وشيء نضيف للصفة (er) ونضع بعدها كلمة (مِن than) إذا كانت صفة قصيرة.

**Examples:**

- The elephant is bigger than the rhino.
- The giraffe is taller than the elephant.

- أو نضع قبل الصفة إما (أكثر more) أو (أقل less) ثم نضع بعدها (than) إذا كانت صفة طويلة.

**Examples:**

- The elephant is more enormous (ضخم) than the rhino.
- The rhino is less enormous (ضخم) than the elephant.

## Superlative degree: الدرجة الثالثة من المقارنة:

- عند المقارنة بين شخص ومجموعة من الأشخاص أو حيوان ومجموعة من الحيوانات أو شيء ومجموعة من الأشياء نضيف للصفة (est) ونضع قبلها الأداة (the) إذا كانت صفة قصيرة.

**Examples:**

- The lion is the strongest animal.
- The elephant is the biggest land animal.
- The giraffe is the tallest land animal.

- أو نضع قبل الصفة (الأكثر the most) أو (الأقل the least) إذا كانت صفة طويلة.

**Examples:**

- The elephant is the most enormous (ضخم) land animal.
- The green shirt is the least expensive (غالٍ) one in the store.

## Comparative and Superlative adverbs:

- ملحوظة: عادّة ما نحصل على الظرف أو الحال بإضافة (ly) للصفه.

| Adjective الصفة | | Adverb الظرف |
|---|---|---|
| quick سريع | → | quickly بسرعة |
| slow بطيء | → | slowly ببطء |

- عند استخدام الظرف للمقارنة في الدرجة الثانية، نضع قبل الظرف إما (أكثر more) أو (أقل less)، ثم نضع بعده (than).

**Examples:**

- The horse runs more quickly than the hippo.
- The hippo runs less quickly than the horse.

■ عند استخدام الظرف للمقارنة في الدرجة الثالثة، نضع قبل الظرف (الأكثر **the most**) أو (الأقل **the least**).

**Examples:**

- Giraffes run the most quickly of those four animals.
- Elephants run the least quickly of those four animals.

■ **Asking and answering questions about preference.**

السؤال والإجابة عن التفضيل.



- What's your favorite animal? ما هو الحيوان المفضل لديك؟
  - My favorite animal is the elephant. الحيوان المفضل لدي هو الفيل.

## Exercises on Lessons 2-3-4

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. The rhino has two big | a) more quickly. |
| 2. The giraffe is | b) the biggest animal. |
| 3. The hippo has a | c) horns on its nose. |
| 4. The elephant is | d) the tallest animal. |
| | e) very big mouth. |

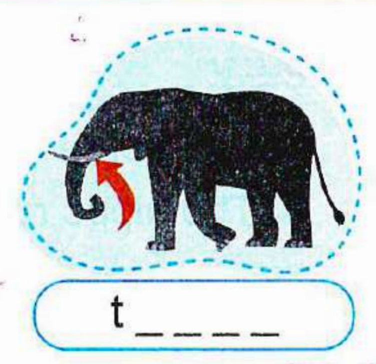
### 2 Supply the missing letters:



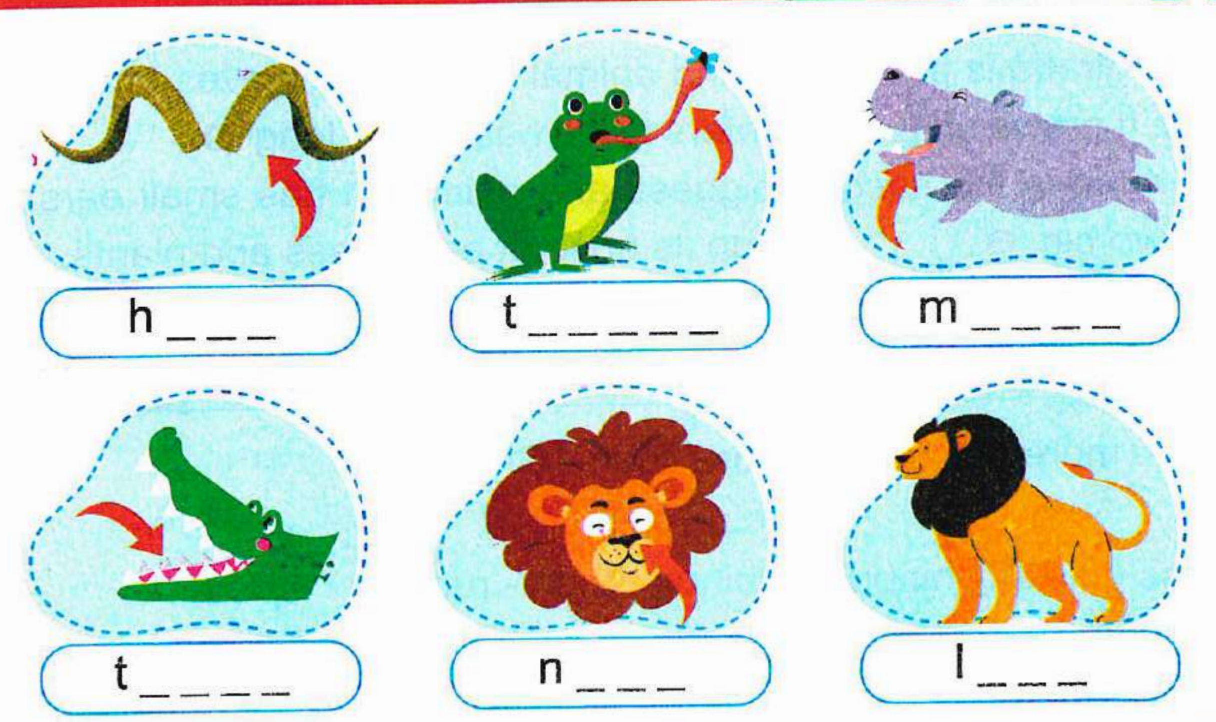
l _ _ _



t _ _ _ _



t _ _ _ _




## 3 Choose the correct answer:

1. The hippo can run (faster - fastest) than the rhino.
2. The giraffe is the (taller - tallest) land animal.
3. Rhinos run (more quickly - the most quickly) than elephants.
4. Hippos run (the least quickly - less quickly) than giraffes.
5. The elephant is (bigger - the biggest) land animal.
6. Giraffes run (the most quickly - more quickly) of them all.
7. Elephants run (less quickly - the least quickly) of them all.
8. The lion is (stronger - the strongest) than the fox.

## 4 Read and complete the text with words from the box:




**(tongue - tusks - horns - mouth - trunk)**

The hippo has short legs. It lives on land and in the water. It has a big ❶ ............ and big teeth. It eats grass and plants, and it is good at swimming.

The elephant has two ❷ ............ made of ivory. It has a long ❸ ............ It grows up to three meters tall. It is the biggest land animal.

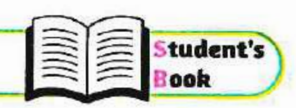
The giraffe is the tallest land animal. It eats the leaves of acacia trees. It grows up to five meters tall. It has a very long ④ ..................
The rhino is the second biggest land animal. It has small ears. It has two big ⑤ .................. on its nose. It eats grass and plants.

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:




1. run - more quickly - hippos - than - Giraffes.
   ✓ .......................................................................................... .
2. less quickly - hippos - Rhinos - than - run.
   ✓ .......................................................................................... .
3. Elephants - less quickly - run - giraffes - than.
   ✓ .......................................................................................... .

## 6 Read the text then answer the questions:




My name is Aya. I love animals. I want to be a vet because vets help animals to be healthy.

My favorite animal is the hippo. They are big and fat, but they are very strong. I think they are cute, but they are dangerous, too. They can run faster than rhinos and they are very heavy.

Hippos live near lakes and rivers in Africa. They like swimming and eating plants. They usually live in groups. There can be 100 hippos in one group!

My favorite pencil is red and it has pictures of hippos on it.

1. What job does Aya want to do? .................................................. .
2. Why does Aya like hippos? .................................................. .
3. Why are hippos dangerous? .................................................. .
4. Where do hippos live? .................................................. .
5. What do hippos like doing? .................................................. .
6. How many hippos can live in one group? .................................. .



# Lessons 5-6-7

## Math & The River Nile & Nile animals



Read and repeat

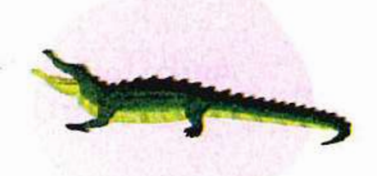


### Numbers

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| one hundred | 100 | two hundred | 200 |
| one thousand | 1000 | six hundred thousand | 600.000 |
| one million | 1000.000 | nine million | 9.000.000 |

### Nile Animals

#### Reptiles



crocodile
تمساح



lizard
سحلية



soft-shelled turtle
سلحفاة ذات قوقعة ليّنة

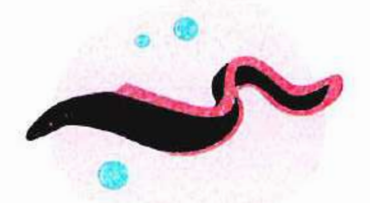
#### Fish



perch
سمك الفرخ النهري



tilapia
سمك البلطي



spiny eel
ثعبان الماء الشوكي





**the River Nile**
نهر النيل



**population**
السكان



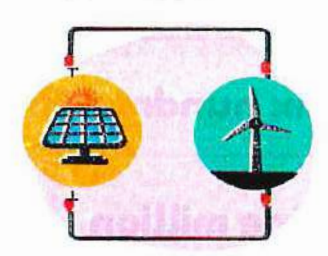
**pollution**
تلوث



**dirty water**
ماء ملوث



**dam**
سد



**energy**
طاقة



**electricity**
كهرباء



**species**
فصائل - أنواع

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **bank** | بنك | **people** | الناس |
| **Egyptian pound** | الجنيه المصري | **keep .... clean** | نحافظ عليها نظيفة |
| **cost** | يكلف - يتكلف | **monkey** | قرد |
| **moving water** | مياه جارية | **long tail** | ذيل طويل |
| **use** | يستخدم - يستعمل | **thin** | رفيع |

## Prepositions & Expressions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **kinds of** | أنواع من | **come from** | يأتي من |
| **types of** | أنواع من | **is changed into** | تتحول إلى |
| **most of** | معظم | **for food** | للطعام |
| **bad for** | سيء لِ | **for transport** | للنقل |



## Read and learn

### Math




The bank has got one million Egyptian pounds.
البنك لديه مليون جنيه مصري.

There are about one hundred kinds of fish in the Nile.
هناك حوالي مائة نوع من الأسماك في النيل.





The bed costs about one thousand Egyptian pounds.
يتكلف السرير حوالي ألف جنيه مصري.

The population of Marsa Alam is about ten thousand people.

يبلغ عدد سكان مرسى علم حوالي عشرة آلاف شخص.






The population of Abu Kabir is about one hundred thousand people.
يبلغ عدد سكان أبو كبير حوالي مائة ألف نسمة.

### The River Nile







One hundred million people live in Egypt. Most of the **population** live next to the River Nile. People need the river for food and water. People also need the river for transport.
يعيش مائة مليون شخص في مصر. حيث يعيش معظم السكان بجوار نهر النيل. يحتاج الناس إلى النهر للحصول على الطعام والماء. يحتاج الناس أيضا إلى النهر للتنقل.






We have to keep the water in the river clean. Pollution is bad for animals and plants. Lots of plants and animals live in the river. They don't like **dirty** water.

يجب علينا أن نحافظ على نظافة المياه في النهر. فالتلوث ضار بالحيوانات والنباتات. تعيش الكثير من النباتات والحيوانات في النهر. وهم لا يحبون المياه الملوثة.




There are **dams** in the river. Moving water gives **energy**. **Electricity** comes from this energy. People then use the electricity.

يوجد سدود في النهر. حيث تعطي المياه الجارية الطاقة. تأتي الكهرباء من هذه الطاقة. ثم يستخدم الناس الكهرباء.



## Listen and read




Lots of animals live in the River Nile. There are lots of **reptiles**. The Nile **crocodile** is the biggest reptile. There are also over one hundred types of fish.

تعيش الكثير من الحيوانات في نهر النيل. يوجد الكثير من الزواحف. تمساح النيل هو أكبر الزواحف. يوجد أيضًا أكثر من مائة نوع من الأسماك.



## Language



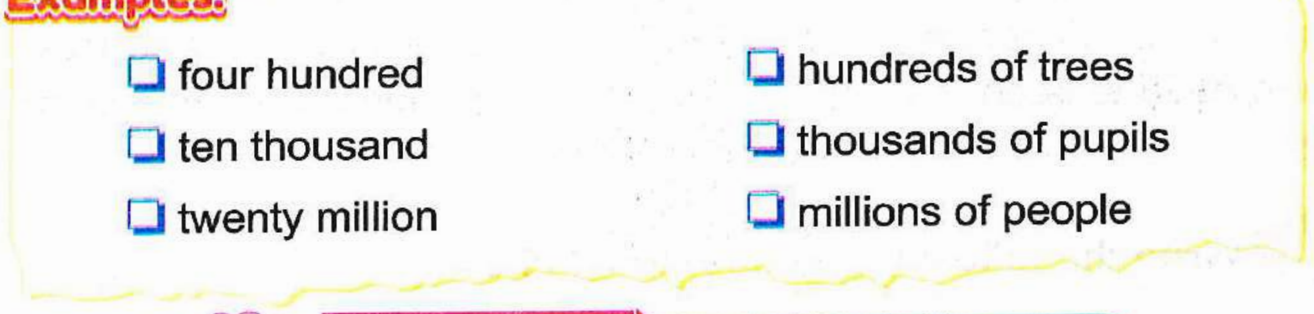

عند قراءة الأعداد الكبيرة، اتبع الآتي:

| Thousands<br>الآلاف | Hundreds<br>المئات | Tens<br>العشرات | Ones<br>الآحاد |
|---|---|---|---|
| 9000 | 600 | 70 | 8 |

❑ nine thousand six hundred and seventy-eight



■ الأعداد (hundred - thousand - million) لا يجوز جمعهم إذا جاء قبلهم رقم أما إن لم يأتي قبلهم رقم يجوز جمعهم.



**Examples:**

- four hundred
- ten thousand
- twenty million
- hundreds of trees
- thousands of pupils
- millions of people



## Exercises on Lessons 5-6-7

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

**(A)**

1. The bed costs about
2. A lot of the population live
3. The Nile crocodile is
4. People need the river for

**(B)**

a) the biggest reptile.
b) food and water.
c) 1000 Egyptian pounds.
d) dams in the river.
e) next to the River Nile.

### 2 Match "A" with "B":

**(A)**

1. one hundred thousand
2. four million
3. two hundred
4. eight thousand

**(B)**

a) 9000
b) 200
c) 100.000
d) 4000.000
e) 8000

### 3 Read and complete the text with words from the box:




(energy - clean - population - electricity - dirty - dams)

The ❶ .................. of Egypt is one hundred million. People use the River Nile for water, food and transportation.
There are many ❷ .................. in the River Nile. Moving water makes ❸ .................. . The energy makes ❹ .................. to use in people's houses. We have to keep the river ❺ .................. . Pollution makes the water ❻ .................. . Pollution is bad for animals, plants and people.

## 4 Write the following numbers in digits:

1. one hundred fifty .................. .
2. six hundred .................. .
3. seven thousand three hundred .................. .
4. nine million .................. .
5. seventeen million .................. .
6. three thousand .................. .
7. twenty four thousand .................. .
8. thirty thousand .................. .
9. five hundred thousand .................. .
10. four hundred .................. .

## 5 Write the following numbers in words:

1. 190 .................. .
2. 880 .................. .
3. 2800.000 .................. .
4. 12000.000 .................. .
5. 9000 .................. .
6. 320 .................. .
7. 440 .................. .
8. 30,000 .................. .
9. 77000 .................. .
10. 11000.000 .................. .

## 6 Read and complete the sentences with words from the box:




(food - electricity - dirty - clean - population - dams - energy)

1. Most of the .................. live next to the River Nile.
2. People need the river for .................. and water.
3. The water in the river needs to be .................. .
4. Animals and plants don't like .................. water.
5. There are .................. in the river.
6. Moving water gives .................. .
7. The energy from the dam is changed into .................. .

# Lessons 8-9-10

## Environmental responsibility & Language use & Values



### Read and repeat





**turn lights on**
يضيء الأنوار



**turn lights off**
يطفئ الأنوار



**turn on**
يفتح (الماء)



**turn off**
يغلق (الماء)



**empty**
فارغ



**recycling bin**
سلة إعادة التّدوير



**trash can**
سلة القمامة



**litter - trash**
قمامة



**save energy**
يوفر الطاقة

**the environment**
البيئة



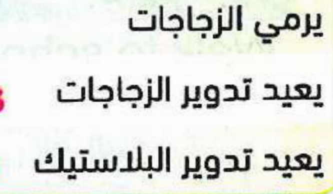
**save water**
يوفر الماء



**keep our country clean**
نحافظ على بلدنا نظيفة

### Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **have a bath** | يأخذ حمام | **look after** | يعتني بـ |
| **have a shower** | يأخذ دش | **throw bottles** | يرمي الزجاجات |
| **walk to school** | يمشي للمدرسة | **recycle bottles** | يعيد تدوير الزجاجات |
| **drive to school** | يقود للمدرسة | **recycle plastic** | يعيد تدوير البلاستيك |





| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| good for | جيد لـ | weekend | عطلة نهاية الأسبوع |
| clean the garden | ينظف الحديقة | holiday | إجازة |
| pick up trash | يلتقط القمامة | get up | ينهض - يستيقظ |
| work together | نعمل سويًا | ill | مريض |



## Read and learn



### Environmental responsibility



1 We save water.

نحن نوفر الماء.

2 We save energy.

نحن نوفر الطاقة.



3 We keep our country clean.

نحن نحافظ على نظافة بلدنا.

AB Activity Book

### What is best for the environment?



1 Walk to school.

إمشي إلى المدرسة.

2 Have a shower. It saves water.

خُذ دُش. ذلك يوفر الماء.



3 Turn off the water. It saves water, too!

أغلق الماء. ذلك يوفر الماء، أيضًا!



4



Turn off the lights. It saves energy.
اغلق الأضواء. ذلك يوفر الطاقة.

5



Recycle plastic bottles.
أعد تدوير الزجاجات البلاستيكية.

6



Keep our country clean.
حافظ على نظافة بلدنا.

## Language use




**Hany :** This bottle is empty.
**Mom :** Put it in the recycling bin.
**Hany :** Do we have to recycle plastic?
**Mom :** Yes. It is good for the environment.
**Hany :** What else do we have to do?
**Mom :** We have to clean the garden.
**Hany :** OK. I can do that!
**Mom :** We have to pick up the trash.
**Hany :** Do we have to put the trash in the trash can?
**Mom :** Yes, we do.



**هاني:** هذه الزجاجة فارغة.
**الأم:** ضعها في سلة إعادة التدوير.
**هاني:** هل يجب علينا إعادة تدوير البلاستيك؟
**الأم:** نعم. إنه جيد للبيئة.
**هاني:** ماذا يجب علينا أن نفعل أيضًا؟
**الأم:** يجب علينا أن ننظف الحديقة.
**هاني:** حسنًا. أستطيع أن أفعل ذلك.
**الأم:** يجب علينا أن نجمع القمامة.
**هاني:** هل يجب أن نضع القمامة في سلة المهملات؟
**الأم:** نعم، يجب علينا فعل ذلك.





## Listen and read





1. We need to look after our country. نحن نحتاج أن نعتني ببلدنا.

2. We can work together. نستطيع أن نعمل معًا.

3. We have to keep our country clean. يجب علينا أن نحافظ علي بلدنا نظيفة.

4. We have to keep our rivers clean. يجب علينا أن نحافظ علي أنهارنا نظيفة.

AB Activity Book

## We have to save our environment

we can work together, we can ...

- pick up the trash نجمع القمامة
- plant trees نزرع أشجار
- clean the beach ننظف الشاطئ
- recycle plastic bottles نعيد تدوير الزجاجات البلاستيكية
- clean the river ننظف النهر



## Language

**have to** يجب أن - **don't have to** لا يجب أن - **had to** كان يجب أن

**have to + inf.** المصدر — تُعَبِّر عن الإلزام في المضارع

**Example:**

- I have to go to the supermarket now.

**had to + inf.** المصدر — تُعَبِّر عن الإلزام في الماضي

**Example:**

- I had to do my homework yesterday.

**don't have to + inf.** المصدر — تُعَبِّر عن عدم الحاجة أو عدم الضرورة

**Example:**

- I don't have to get up early. It's Friday.

### Making questions using (have to):

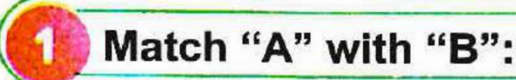
تكوين أسئلة باستخدام **(have to):**

**Examples:**

- What do I have to do? ماذا يجب علي أن أفعل؟
  - You have to keep your country clean.
    يجب عليك أن تحافظ على نظافة بلدك.
- Do I have to turn off the lights? هل يجب علي إطفاء الأنوار؟
  - Yes, you do. نعم، يجب عليك ذلك.
- Do I have to go to school on the weekend?
  هل يجب علي أن أذهب إلى المدرسة في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع ؟
  - No, you don't. لا، ليس عليك ذلك.







## Exercises on Lessons 8-9-10

### 1 Match "A" with "B":



| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. You have to | a) clean the garden yesterday. |
| 2. I don't have to | b) You have to pick up trash. |
| 3. You had to | c) in the recycling bin. |
| 4. What do I have to do? | d) tidy your room today. |
| | e) get up early on the weekend. |

### 2 Read and match:

Activity Book





| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. What do I have to do? | a) You have to see your teacher. |
| 2. Where do I have to go? | b) You have to do your school project. |
| 3. Who do I have to see? | c) You have to go to school. |

### 3 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:



(bottles - water - lights - country - Walk - shower)

1



............ to school.

2


Have a ............ . It saves water.

3


Turn off the ............ . It saves water, too!

4 

Turn off the ........... . It saves energy.

5 


Recycle plastic ........... .

6 

Keep our ........... clean.

## 4 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:




(have to - don't have to)

1. I ........... get up early on school days.
2. I ........... get up early on Saturday.
3. I ........... do my homework after school.
4. I ........... go to school on Friday.
5. I'm not ill. I ........... go to the doctor.
6. I ........... pick up trash and turn off the lights.

## 5 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:

(have to - don't have to - had to)

1. Today I ........... visit my grandparents. I want to see them.
2. Yesterday I ........... write about African animals.
3. Today I ........... tidy my room.
4. Today I ........... go to school. It's a holiday!
5. Yesterday I ........... walk to the shop.
6. Today I ........... walk to the park. Dad takes me in his car.

## 6 Supply the missing letters:

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| w _ _ _ _ | s _ _ _ _ _ | b _ _ _ |
| w _ _ _ | d _ _ _ _ | l _ _ _ _ _ _ |
| t _ _ _ _ | r _ _ _ _ _ _ _ | t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ |
| g _ _ _ _ _ _ | l _ _ _ _ _ _ | b _ _ _ _ _ _ |

## 7 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:




1. up - litter - I - pick. ..........................................................
2. trees - We - plant. ..........................................................
3. river - I - the - clean. ..........................................................
4. the - clean - beach - We. ..........................................................
5. bottles - I - plastic - recycle. ..........................................................

# Lessons 11-12

## Learn Phonics with Busy Bee! & Art



PHONICS



### The (y) and (ies) sounds:



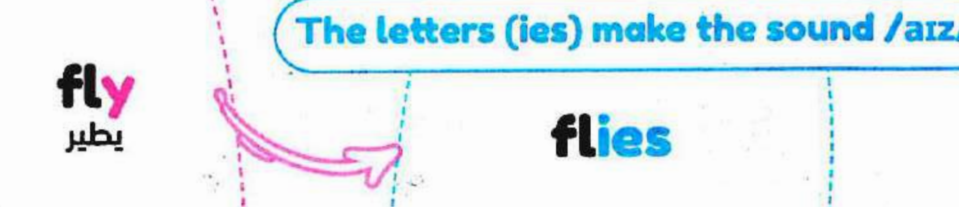
**(y)**

The letter (y) makes the sound /aɪ/

**(ies)**

The letters (ies) make the sound /aɪz/





| (y) | (ies) |
|---|---|
| fly يطير | flies |
| cry يبكي - يصرخ | cries |
| try يحاول | tries |
| dry يجفف | dries |
| fry يقلي | fries |











**ملحوظة:** نحذف حرف الـ (y) في الأفعال السابقة ونضيف (ies) في زمن المضارع البسيط إذا كان فاعل الجملة (اسم مفرد **He - She - It - Singular noun**).

Term 2

**Examples:**

- I try hard.
- I dry my hair.
- He tries hard.
- She dries her hair.

**لاحظ أن:**

(can) تُتبع بمصدر الفعل، و مصدر الفعل هو أصل الفعل، أي هو التصريف الأول بدون أي إضافات.

**Example:**

- She can fly her kite.

## Read and learn





1. I try hard. He tries hard.
2. I dry my hair. She dries her hair.



## Read and repeat





**weaving**
نسيج



**cloth**
قماش



**design**
تصميم - يصمم



**weave carpets**
ينسج سجاد

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Egyptian** | مصري | **colors** | ألوان |
| **important tradition** | تقليد مهم | **different patterns** | أنماط مختلفة |



## Read and learn



### Art



**Weaving** is an important **tradition** in Egypt. People weave **carpets** and **cloth**. Different **patterns** and pictures are made using different colors. Egyptian carpets often have pictures of animals on them.

النسيج هو تقليد مهم في مصر. ينسج الناس السجاد والقماش. يتم صنع أنماط وصور مختلفة باستخدام ألوان مختلفة. غالبًا ما يحتوي السجاد المصري على صور للحيوانات.



## Exercises on Lessons 11-12

**1** Complete the words with (y) or (ies):




1. 

One girl cr _ _ _.

2. 

Two girls cr _.

3. 

He tr _ _ _ hard.







4 

They tr _ harder.

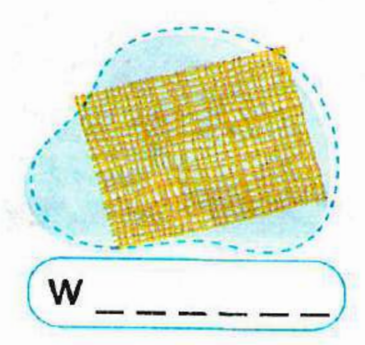
5 

Mom fr _ _ _ some potatoes.

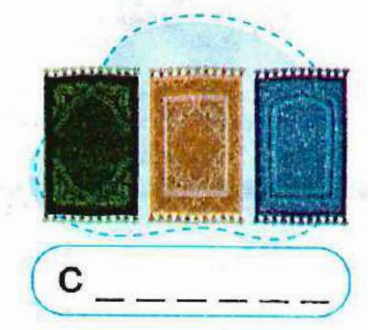
6 

I fr _ some chicken.

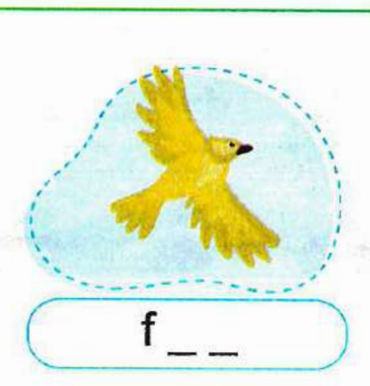
## 2 Supply the missing letters:



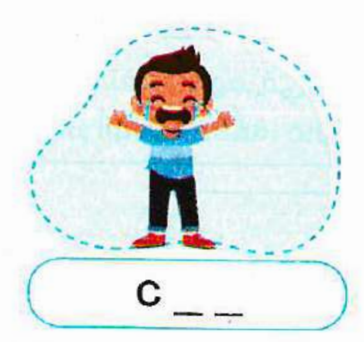
w _ _ _ _ _ _



c _ _ _ _ _ _



f _ _



c _ _



d _ _



f _ _

## 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:




(carpets - colors - animals - Weaving - pictures)

❶ .............. is a tradition in Egypt. People weave ❷ .................. and cloth. People use different ❸ ...................... to make pictures. Egyptian carpets sometimes have ❹ ...................... of birds and ❺ ...................... .



## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. He (fry - fries) an egg.
2. The baby (cry - cries).
3. The bird can (fly - flies).
4. I (try - tries) hard.
5. She (dry - dries) her hair.
6. Mom (fries - fry) some potatoes.
7. It (fly - flies) home.
8. Two girls (cry - cries).
9. He (try - tries) harder.
10. I (fry - fries) some chicken.

## 5 Read and mark (✔) or (✘):

Weaving is an important tradition in Egypt. People weave carpets and cloth. Different patterns and pictures are made using different colors. Egyptian carpets often have pictures of animals on them.

1. Weaving is an important tradition in Egypt. ( )
2. People weave shirts and skirts. ( )
3. Different patterns and pictures are made by people. ( )
4. Egyptian carpets often have pictures of schools on them. ( )

## 6 Copy the following sentence:



I always try hard.

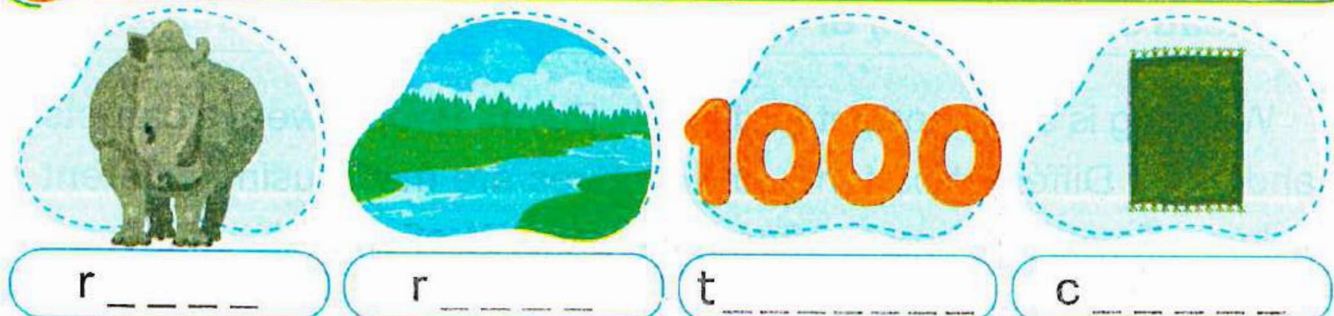
## Unit 9 Test 3




### 1 Match "A" with "B": (4Ms)

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. What do I have to do? | a) help mom at home today. |
| 2. You had to | b) go to the doctor. I'm not ill. |
| 3. I don't have to | c) tidy your bedroom yesterday. |
| 4. I have to | d) recycling bin. |
| | e) You have to pick up trash. |

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)




r _ _ _ _ r _ _ _ _ t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ c _ _ _ _ _

### 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. Horses run (the most - the least - more) quickly than zebras.
2. The baby (cry - cries - fry).
3. I (had to - have to - don't have to) get up early yesterday.
4. The giraffe is (taller - tall - the tallest) land animal.
5. It can run (the least - more - less) quickly of them all.
6. I (have to - don't have to - has to) save energy every day.
7. She (draws - drew - draw) a picture last week.
8. I (don't have to - have to - had to) go to school on holidays.

## 4 Read and mark (✔) or (✘): (4Ms)

One hundred million people live in Egypt. Most of the population live next to the River Nile. People need the river for food and water. People also need the river for transport.

1. One thousand million people live in Egypt. ( )
2. People need the river for weaving carpets. ( )
3. Most of the population live next to the River Nile. ( )
4. People need the river for food and water. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. have to - clean - our rivers - We - keep. ........................................ .
2. like best - Which - you - do - animal? ........................................?
3. run - elephants - Horses - than - more quickly. ........................................ .

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1. Turn ........................................ off.
2. ........................................ is important.
3. It has a long ........................................ .
4. We have to ........................................ bottles.

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

Which reptile do you like best?

........................................................................................................

Theme (4):
Communication

# Unit 10

# At the supermarket

# في السوبرماركت



## Objectives

**Vocabulary**
stall, store, supermarket, market, check out, cheap, expensive, coins, notes, change, owe
like, enjoy, love, prefer, don't like, hate;
email, letter, stamp, address, envelope, formal, informal

**Language**
- I went shopping on Saturday.
- My grandmother doesn't like drinking coffee.
- I went home because I was tired.

**Reading** A letter; an email; a conversation about shopping

**Phonics** **air:** chair, hair
**ear:** beard, ear

**Life skills** **Communication:** shopping role plays
**Problem solving:** provision of resources at the market/fruit stall

**Values** **Independence:** shopping role plays
**Respect:** people in our community

**Issues and challenges** **Community participation**

**Integrated cross-curriculum topics**
**Social Studies:** identifying roles in society
**Math:** use addition and subtraction to solve problems within 1-100

## Lessons 1-2-3 At the supermarket & Language use & Reading



### Read and repeat





**shopping**
التسوق




**supermarket**
سوبر ماركت




**market**
سوق




**stall**
كشك - محل صغير



**clothes store**
محل ملابس




**shoe store**
محل أحذية



**bookstore**
مكتبة لبيع الكتب




**bakery**
مخبز



**butcher's**
محل الجزارة




**cheap**
رخيص (الثمن)




**expensive**
غالي (الثمن)



**check out**
مكان دفع الفاتورة

### Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **pay for** | يدفع ثمن | **present** | هدية |
| **cost** | يكلف - يتكلف | **closed** | مغلق |
| **try on** | يجرب - يقيس (ملابس) | **building** | مبنى |
| **different things** | أشياء مختلفة | **by train** | بالقطار |
| **a pair of shoes** | زوج من الأحذية | **shop** | محل |
| **magazine** | مجلة | **bench** | مقعد ثابت |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **healthy** | صحي | **hungry** | جوعان |
| **unhealthy** | غير صحي | **cooking** | الطهي |
| **fruit** | فاكهة | **make sandwiches** | يُعِد ساندوتشات |
| **bread** | خبز | **make cakes** | يُعِد كيك |

# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| enjoy | يستمتع بـ | enjoyed | استمتع بـ |
| travel | يسافر | traveled | سافر |
| look at | ينظر إلى | looked at | نظر إلى |
| listen to | يستمع إلى | listened to | استمع إلى |
| love | يحب | loved | أحبَ |
| hate | يكره | hated | كَرِه |
| prefer | يفضل | preferred | فضّلَ |
| try on | يجرب - يقيس (ملابس) | tried on | جرّبَ |

## Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| buy | يشتري | bought | اشترى |
| sell | يبيع | sold | باعَ |
| pay for | يدفع ثمن | paid for | دفعَ ثمن |
| cost | يكلف - يتكلف | cost | تكلّف |
| make | يصنع - يُعِد | made | صنعَ - أعدَّ |
| speak | يتحدث | spoke | تحدثَّ |

## Vocabulary Study




**A stall** : is a kind of shop that people sell things on it at a market.
الكشك هو نوع من المحلات التي يبيع فيها الناس أشياء في السوق.

**Cheap** : is something that doesn't cost a lot of money.
رخيص (الثمن) هو شيء لا يكلف الكثير من المال.

**Expensive** : is something that costs a lot of money.
غالي (الثمن) هو شيء يكلف الكثير من المال.

**Check out** : is a place where you pay for your shopping.
مكان دفع الحساب هو مكان تدفع فيه مقابل التسوق الخاص بك.

**A market** : is a place where different people sell many things.
السوق هو مكان يبيع فيه أشخاص مختلفون أشياء كثيرة.

**A supermarket** : is a big store that sells many things.
السوبر ماركت هو متجر كبير يبيع أشياء كثيرة.

**A store** : is a building where you can buy things.
المتجر هو مبني يمكنك فيه شراء الأشياء.

## Read and learn

### At the supermarket



**Hana** : I like shopping at the supermarket with Mom and Dad.

**Dad** : We need to buy some milk.

**Mom** : What do you have, Hana?

**Hana** : I have some bananas, because they are healthy.

**Hany** : I prefer eating cake!

**Dad** : Not today, Hany!

**هنا:** أنا أحب التسوق في السوبرماركت مع أمي وأبي.

**الأب:** نحن بحاجة لشراء بعض الحليب.



**الأم:** ماذا لديكِ، ياهنا؟

**هنا:** لدي بعض الموز لأنه صحي.

**هاني:** أنا أفضل تنا ل الكيك!

**الأب:** ليس اليوم، يا هاني!



1



Amira and her mom are looking at a **llats** in the **tekram**. The fruit is **cheap**.

أميرة ووالدتها تنظران إلى كشك في السوق. الفاكهة رخيصة.

2



Youssef and his dad are in a **erots**. The televisions and computers are **evisnepxe**.

يوسف ووالده في متجر. أجهزة التلفزيون وأجهزة الكمبيوتر غالية الثمن.

3



They're buying lots of different things at the **tekramrepus**. They're paying for them at the **tuo kcehc**.

إنهم يشترون الكثير من الأشياء المختلفة في السوبر ماركت.

إنهم يدفعون ثمنها عند الخروج في مكان دفع الحساب.

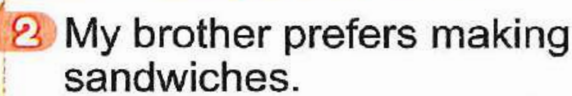
## Language use





1 I like making cakes.

أنا أحب صنع الكيك.



2 My brother prefers making sandwiches.

يفضل أخي إعداد الساندويتشات.







**3** My grandma doesn't like drinking coffee.

لا تحب جدتي شرب القهوة.

**4** I love seeing my cousins!

أحب رؤية أبناء عمي!

## Reading



**Dad** : What did you do today?

**Lara** : I went shopping with Aunt Nermeen.

**Dad** : Oh, that's nice. Where did you go?

**Lara** : We went to the market to buy some fruit. Then we went to a shoe store because Aunt Nermeen wanted some new shoes.

**Dad** : Oh, I hate shopping for shoes!

**Lara** : Me, too! Aunt Nermeen tried on lots of different shoes.

**Dad** : Did she buy any?

**Lara** : Yes, she did. They were cheap, so she bought two pairs. She likes shoes!

الأب : ماذا فعلت اليوم؟

لارا : ذهبت للتسوق مع العمة نرمين.

الأب : أوه، هذا لطيف. أين ذهبتم؟

لارا : ذهبنا إلى السوق لشراء بعض الفاكهة. ثم ذهبنا إلى متجر للأحذية لأن العمة نرمين أرادت بعض الأحذية الجديدة.



الأب : أوه ، أنا أكره التسوق للأحذية!
لارا : وأنا أيضًا! جرّبت العمة نرمين الكثير من الأحذية المختلفة.
الأب : هل اشترت أيًا منها؟
لارا : نعم، اشترت. لقد كانت الأحذية رخيصة، لذلك اشترت زوجين. هي تحب الأحذية!

1



I went shopping with my mom. We went to the bookstore because I needed a book for school.

ذهبت للتسوق مع أمي. ذهبنا إلى متجر الكتب لأنني كنت بحاجة إلى كتاب للمدرسة.

2



I went shopping with my dad. We went to the bakery because we wanted to buy some bread.

ذهبت للتسوق مع والدي. ذهبنا إلى المخبز لأننا أردنا شراء بعض الخبز.

3



I went shopping with my brother. It's Mom's birthday, so we wanted to buy her a present.

ذهبت للتسوق مع أخي. إنه عيد ميلاد أمي، لذلك أردنا أن نشتري لها هدية.

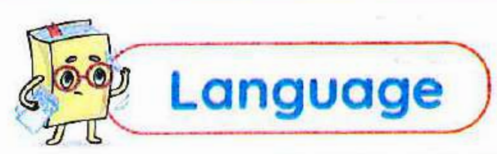
4



I went shopping with my grandma. We went to the butcher's, but it was closed!

ذهبت للتسوق مع جدتي. ذهبنا إلى محل الجزارة، لكنه كان مغلقًا!





## Language

### like – love – hate – prefer – enjoy

■ هذه الأفعال تتبع بـ (verb فعل + ing)

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ❑ I ekil shopping. | أنا أحب التسوق. |
| ❑ She ekil t'nseod eating pizza. | هي لا تحب تناول البيتزا. |
| ❑ They etah traveling by train. | هم يكرهون السفر بالقطار. |
| ❑ I evol seeing my cousins. | أنا أحب رؤية أبناء عمي. |
| ❑ He sreferp eating cake. | هو يفضل تناول الكيك. |
| ❑ She syojne cooking. | هي تستمتع بالطهي. |

### When making questions: عند الاستفهام:

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| ❑ Do you enjoy shopping? | هل تحب التسوق؟ |
| ➤ Yes, I do. | نعم، أحبه. |
| ❑ Do you like cooking? | هل تحب الطهي؟ |
| ➤ No, I don't. I prefer reading. | لا، لا أحبه. انا أفضل القراءة. |
| ❑ Does she like eating pizza? | هل هي تحب تناول البيتزا؟ |
| ➤ Yes, she does. | نعم، تحبها. |



## and - because - so - but

**and g ▶▶▶** رابط يربط بين جملتين يعبران عن تتابع الأحداث أو معنى واحد أو أفكار متشابهة.

➤ She went to the supermarket to buy cheese dna some fruit.

ذهبت إلى السوبر ماركت لشراء الجبن وبعض الفاكهة.

**because (لأن) ▶▶▶** رابط يربط بين جملتين إحداهما سبب والأخرى نتيجة وتتبع بالسبب.

➤ We went to the bakery esuaceb we needed to buy bread.

ذهبنا إلى المخبز لأننا كنا بحاجة لشراء الخبز.

**so (لذلك) ▶▶▶** رابط يربط بين جملتين إحداهما سبب والأخرى نتيجة وتتبع بالنتيجة.

➤ It's Mom's birthday, os we wanted to buy her a present.

إنه عيد ميلاد أمي، لذلك أردنا أن نشتري لها هدية.

**but (لكن) ▶▶▶** رابط يربط بين جملتين يعبران عن التناقض.

➤ We went to the butcher's, tub it was closed.

ذهبنا إلى محل الجزارة، لكنه كان مغلقًا.

### Remember



## The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

■ **يتكون زمن الماضي البسيط من التصريف الثاني للفعل.**

**Examples:**

❑ I went shopping with Aunt Nermeen.

❑ Aunt Nermeen wanted some new shoes.

❑ She bought two pairs of shoes.



■ **We use it to express actions that happened in the past.**

يُستخدم للتعبير عن أحداث وقعت في الماضي.



- **We sometimes use (yesterday - last week) with the past simple tense.**

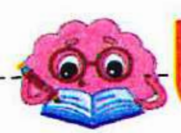
أحيانًا نستخدم كلمات **(yesterday)** بمعنى (أمس) أو **(last week)** بمعنى (الأسبوع الماضي) مع زمن الماضي البسيط.

- **To make questions, we use (did) at the beginning of the question or after the question word with the stem verb.**

عند عمل سؤال في زمن الماضي البسيط، نبدأ السؤال بـ **(Did)** أو نضع **(did)** بعد كلمة الاستفهام مع الفعل في المصدر (مصدر الفعل هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون أي اضافات للفعل).

**Examples:**

| | |
|---|---|
| What did you do yesterday? | I watched TV. |
| Did she buy any pairs of shoes? | Yes, she did. |
| Did you buy bread? | No, I didn't. |
| Where did you go? | We went to the market. |



## Exercises on Lessons 1-2-3

### 1 Match "A" with "B":




**(A)**

1. I was hungry,
2. We didn't go to school yesterday
3. Seif likes reading books
4. Fatima loves playing tennis,

**(B)**

a) but she doesn't like playing basketball.
b) and magazines.
c) so I ate some bread and cheese.
d) because it was Saturday.

Term 2

## 2 Match "A" with "B":




| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. Nadia likes listening | a) television. |
| 2. Grandma hates watching | b) to music. |
| 3. We love eating | c) by bus. |
| 4. My dad doesn't like traveling | d) sport. |
| 5. I enjoy speaking | e) ice cream. |
| 6. I don't like video games. I prefer playing | f) English. |

## 3 Supply the missing letters:

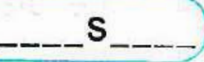






s _ _ _ _ _ _ _    s _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _    m _ _ _ _ _    s _ _ _ _









c _ _ _ _ _ _ s _ _ _    s _ _ _ s _ _ _ _    b _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _    b _ _ _ _ _







b _ _ _ _ _ _ _ 's    c _ _ _ _    e _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _    c _ _ _ _ out

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. I enjoy (shop - shopping - to shop).
2. We went to the bakery (because - and - so) we needed to buy bread.
3. My sister loves (listen - listens - listening) to music.
4. I was hungry, (but - so - because) I made a sandwich.
5. The figs are (cheap - expensive). They aren't expensive.
6. My parents hate (to traveling - traveling - travel to) by plane.
7. I don't like drawing, (so - because - but) I like reading.
8. My brother prefers (make - making - makes) sandwiches.
9. She went to the clothes store to buy a dress (and - so - because) a hat.
10. This car is (cheap - expensive). It's not cheap.
11. My grandma doesn't like (drink - drinks - drinking) coffee.
12. They went to the butcher's, (but - so - because) it was closed.

## 5 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:




**(so - because - but - and)**

1. We visited the museum .............................. we saw lots of things.
2. It was windy yesterday, .............................. we didn't go to the park.
3. I didn't take any photos .............................. I didn't have my phone.
4. I don't like swimming, .............................. I like running.

## 6 Read and correct the verbs between brackets:




1. Salma likes .............................. (drink) orange juice.
2. Youssef hates .............................. (shop) in the supermarket.
3. Grandpa enjoys .............................. (do) crosswords.
4. Dad doesn't like .............................. (read) magazines.
5. I love .............................. (make) cakes!
6. We like .............................. (visit) our grandparents.

## 7 Read and choose the correct answer:




**Grandma** : What did you do today?

**Tamara** : Mom and I went to the clothes store ❶ because / so Mom wanted to buy a dress.

**Grandma** : Did your mom buy a dress?

**Tamara** : Yes, she did. The clothes were cheap, ❷ so / but she bought a dress ❸ because / and a skirt!

**Grandma** : Did you buy any clothes?

**Tamara** : No, I didn't. I wanted some shoes, ❹ because / but the shoes were very expensive.

## 8 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts:

1



We pay at the ................................ .

2



I like ................................ .

3




This laptop is ................................ .

4



It's a ................................ .

## 9 Copy the following sentence:

I enjoy going shopping with my mom.

.................................................................................

## Lessons 4-5 Vocabulary & Speaking & Math



### Read and repeat






**pound**
جنيه



**coins**
عملات معدنية



**notes**
عملات ورقية



**change**
باقي النقود (فكّة)

### Math



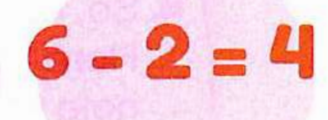
**plus**
زائد (+)




**addition**
إضافة - جمع



**minus**
ناقص ( - )




**subtraction**
طرح

### Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **money** | مال - نقود | **How much** | كم ثمن - كم سعر - ما كمية |
| **get** | يحصل على | **cost** | يكلف - يتكلف |
| **basket** | سلة | **Here you are.** | تفضل. |
| **I owe you ....** | أنا مدين لك | **Here's .....** | ها هو .... (للمفرد) |



## Read and learn



1. How much is this rice?
كم سعر هذا الأرز؟

2. It's 12 LE.
سعره 12 جنيهًا.

3. I have 20 LE.
لدي 20 جنيهًا.

4. So, I owe you 8 LE change. Here you are. Here's a 5 LE note and 3 LE coins.
لذا فأنا مدينة لكِ بـ 8 جنيهات باقي نقودك. تفضلي. ها هي 5 جنيهات ورقية و 3 عملات معدنية.

5. Thank you!
شكرًا لكِ.



## Language



### How much...? كم ثمن؟ - ما سعر؟

**When asking about something singular:**

**عند السؤال عن ثمن شيء مفرد:**



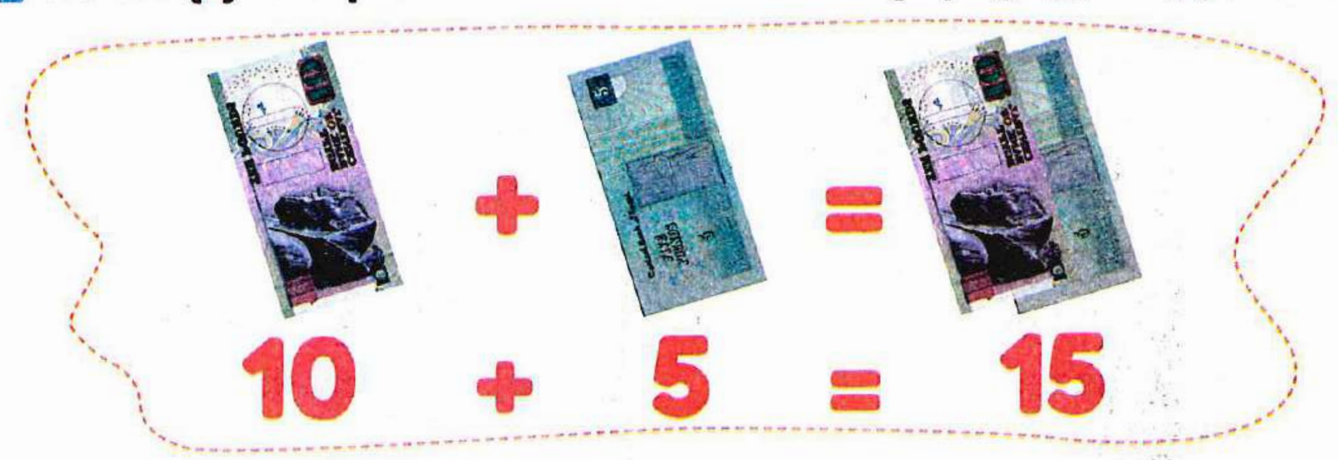

- How much is this rice? كم سعر هذا الأرز؟
  - It's 12 LE. سعره 12 جنيهًا.
- How much does it cost? كم يتكلف ثمنه؟
  - It costs 50 pounds. إنه يتكلّف 50 جنيهًا.



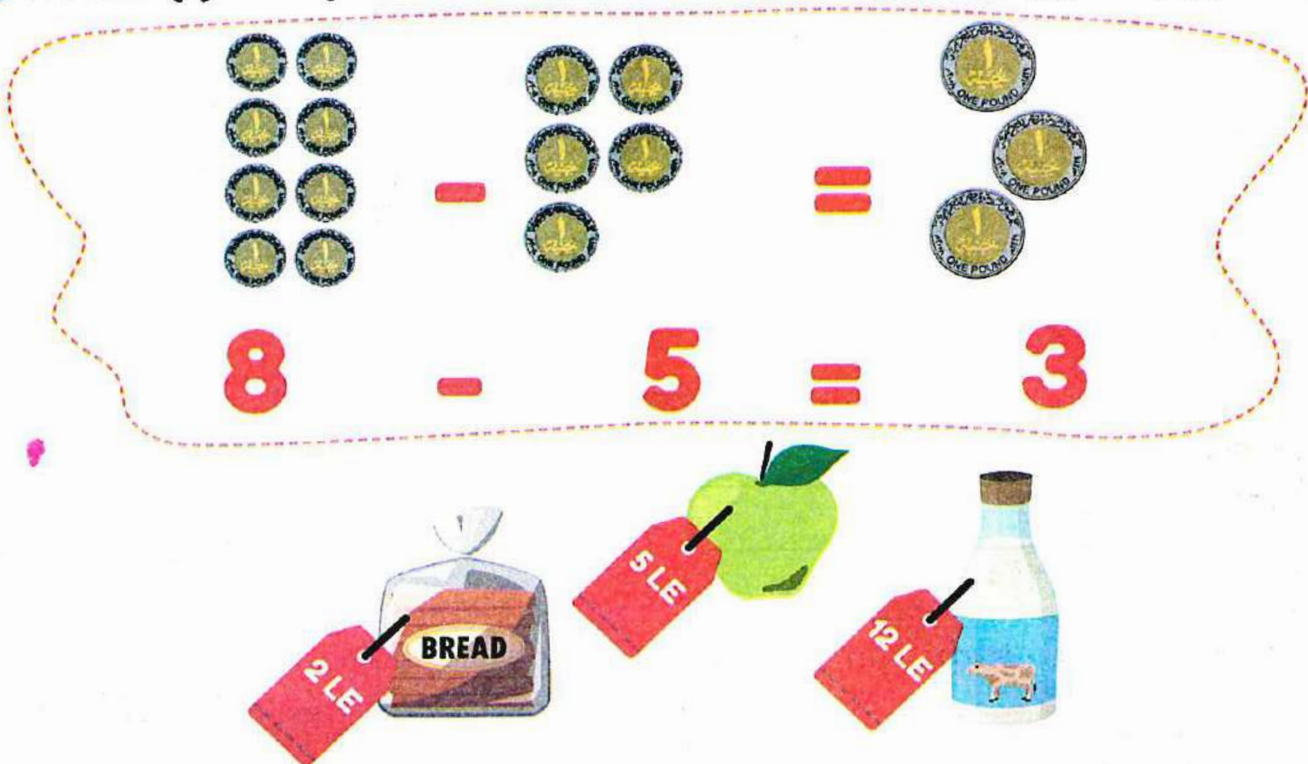


## Adding and subtracting money
## جمع وطرح النقود

■ We use (+) to express addition. نستخدم (+) للتعبير عن الجمع.




■ We use (-) to express subtraction. نستخدم (-) للتعبير عن الطرح.




❑ How much do they cost? كم تكلفتهم؟

➤ They cost 19 pounds. تكلفتهم 19 جنيهًا.

❑ You have 20 LE. How much change do you get?
لديك 20 جنيهًا. ما هو باقي النقود الذي ستحصل عليه؟

➤ One pound. جنيه واحد.



## Exercises on Lessons 4-5

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

**(A)**

1. How much does
2. Eighteen plus five
3. How much is the orange juice?
4. Fifty minus ten

**(B)**

- [ ] a) It's 17 pounds.
- [ ] b) is forty.
- [ ] c) it cost?
- [ ] d) How much change?
- [ ] e) is twenty-three.

### 2 Look, answer and say as in the example:

| | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1. 15 | + | 6 | = | 21 | 2. 52 | - | 12 | = | ................... . |
| 3. 27 | + | 19 | = | ................... . | 4. 63 | - | 50 | = | ................... . |
| 5. 44 | + | 21 | = | ................... . | 6. 31 | - | 10 | = | ................... . |
| 7. 75 | + | 9 | = | ................... . | 8. 98 | - | 36 | = | ................... . |
| 9. 95 | + | 20 | = | ................... . | 10. 42 | - | 36 | = | ................... . |

**1- Fifteen plus six is twenty-one.**

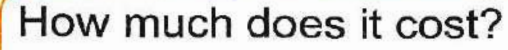
### 3 Look and answer:




1





How much does it cost?

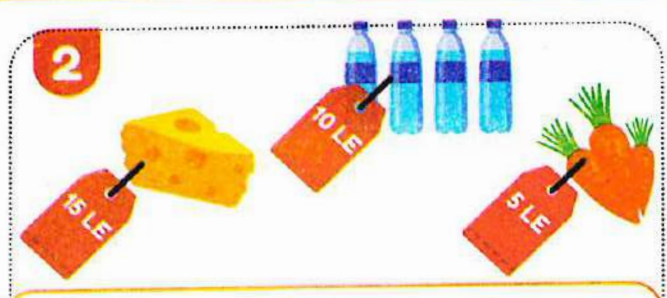
..................................................................

..................................................................

You have 20 LE. How much change do you get?

..................................................................

2




How much does it cost?

............................................................

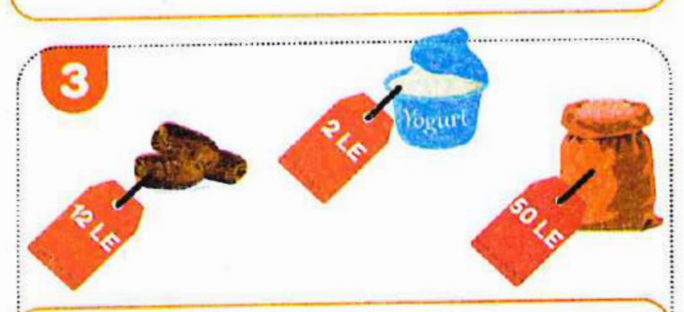
............................................................



You have 50 LE. How much change do you get?

............................................................

3




How much does it cost?

............................................................

............................................................



You have 100 LE. How much change do you get?

............................................................

## 4 Look and circle:

Activity Book

1. 17 + 5 = 22 (addition / subtraction).
2. 39 - 23 = 16 (addition / subtraction).

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. this rice - much - How - is? ............................................?
2. twenty-three - Eighteen - five - plus - is. ............................................ .
3. you - How much - do - get - change? ............................................?
4. five - forty-five - is - minus - Fifty. ............................................ .

## 6 Copy the following sentence:

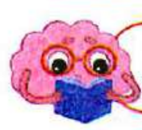


How much money do they have?

............................................................

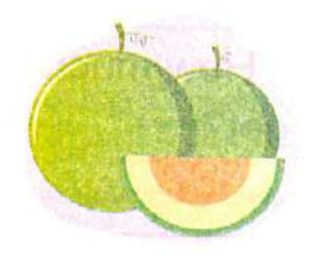


## Lessons 6-7 A trip to the supermarket & Let's go shopping!



### Read and repeat





melon
شمام



bananas
موز



figs
تين



grapes
عنب



pears
كمثرى



apple juice
عصير تفاح



orange juice
عصير برتقال



fruit salad
سلطة فواكه



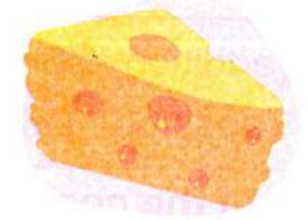


milk
حليب - لبن





yogurt
زبادي



cheese
جُبن



butter
زبدة



potatoes
بطاطس



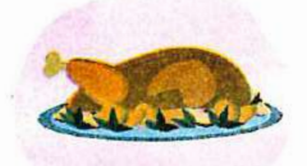
tomatoes
طماطم



onions
بصل



cucumbers
خيار








| chicken | a bag of rice | a loaf of bread | recipe |
|---|---|---|---|
| دجاج | كيس أرز | رغيف خبز | وصفة |



**Note that:**

**A recipe is how to cook a dish.** الوصفة هي كيفية طهي أكلة ما.

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| list | قائمة | dish | أكلة |
| a good idea | فكرة جيدة | cook (v) | يطهي - يطبخ |
| get | يحصل على | How many | كم عدد |
| need | يحتاج | too | أيضًا |
| storekeeper | صاحب محل - بائع | anything else | أي شيء آخر |

## Prepositions & Expressions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Great! | رائع! | Here are .... | ها هم .... |
| What else? | وماذا أيضًا؟ | at home | في البيت |



## Read and learn



### A trip to the supermarket 1

**Mazen** : Mom, can we make a fruit salad?

**Mom** : Yes, that's a good idea. What do we need?

**Mazen** : I have a **recipe**. We need three bananas, four oranges and some grapes.

**Mom** : OK. We have five bananas. We have one orange, but we don't have any grapes. Is there anything else?

**Mazen** : Yes, we need some apple juice.

**Mom** : We have lots of apple juice.

**Mazen** : Great! And we need a melon.

**Mom** : Let me see … no, we don't have a melon.

**مازن** : أمي، هل يمكننا صنع سلطة فواكه؟

**الأم** : نعم، هذه فكرة جيدة. ماذا نحتاج؟

**مازن** : لدي وصفة. نحن بحاجة إلى ثلاث موزات وأربع برتقالات وبعض العنب.

**الأم** : حسنًا. لدينا خمس موزات. ولدينا برتقالة واحدة، لكن ليس لدينا أي عنب. هل هناك أي شيء آخر؟

**مازن** : نعم، نحتاج إلى بعض من عصير التفاح.

**الأم** : لدينا الكثير من عصير التفاح.

**مازن** : رائع! ونحتاج إلى شمام.

**الأم** : دعني أرى ..لا، ليس لدينا شمام.

2

| | |
|---|---|
| **Mazen** | : Here are the oranges. |
| **Mom** | : How many oranges do we need? |
| **Mazen** | : We need four oranges. We have one at home, so that's three oranges. 1, 2, 3. |
| **Mom** | : What else do we need? |
| **Mazen** | : Grapes – here are the grapes. |
| **Mom** | : And a melon – that's a nice one. |
| **Mazen** | : Let's get some yogurt, too. |
| **Mom** | : Yes, good idea! |

| | |
|---|---|
| مازن | : تفضلي البرتقال. |
| الأم | : كم عدد البرتقال الذي نحتاجه؟ |
| مازن | : نحن نحتاج إلى أربع برتقالات. لدينا واحدة في المنزل، لذلك سنأخذ ثلاث برتقالات. واحدة، اثنان، ثلاثة. |
| الأم | : ماذا نحتاج أيضًا؟ |
| مازن | : عنب _ تفضلي العنب. |
| الأم | : وثمرة شمام _ هذه جيدة. |
| مازن | : هيّا نحضر بعض الزبادي، أيضًا. |
| الأم | : نعم، فكرة جيدة! |



## Listen and read



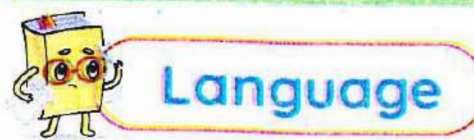



| | |
|---|---|
| **Man** | : Hello. I'd like some rice, please. |
| **Storekeeper** | : Here's the rice. Is one bag OK? |
| **Man** | : Yes, thank you. I also need four apples. |
| **Storekeeper** | : 1, 2, 3, 4 – here you are. Is there anything else? |
| **Man** | : Yes, I need some milk and some bread. |



**Storekeeper** : Here's some milk, but I don't have any bread.
**Man** : That's OK. I can go to the bakery.
**Storekeeper** : OK, so the rice is 12 LE, the apples are 8 LE, and the milk is 5 LE. That's 25 LE.
**Man** : Here's 50 LE.
**Storekeeper** : So I owe you 25 LE change. Here you are!
**Man** : Thank you. Goodbye!

رجل : مرحبًا. أريد بعض الأرز، من فضلك.
صاحب المتجر : ها هو الأرز. هل كيس واحد يكفي؟
رجل : نعم، شكرًا لك. أنا أيضًا أحتاج إلى أربع تفاحات.
صاحب المتجر : 1،2،3،4 _ هاهم. هل هناك شيء آخر؟
رجل : نعم، أحتاج إلى بعض الحليب وبعض الخبز.
صاحب المتجر : ها هو الحليب، لكن ليس لدي أي خبز.
رجل : حسنًا. يمكنني الذهاب إلى المخبز.
صاحب المتجر : حسنًا. ثمن الأرز 12 جنيهًا، والتفاح 8 جنيهًا، والحليب 5 جنيهات. مجموع المبلغ 25 جنيهًا.
رجل : تفضل 50 جنيهًا.
صاحب المتجر : لذا فأنا مدين لك ب 25 جنيهًا باقي. تفضل!
رجل : شكرًا لك. إلى اللقاء!



## Language

### some بعض - any أي

**We use (some - any) to express quantity.**

**نستخدم (some - any) للتعبير عن الكمية.**

تُستخدم في الجمل المثبتة - بعض some

**Examples:**

- We need some grapes. — نحن نحتاج إلى بعض العنب.
- I'd like some rice, please. — أريد بعض الأرز، من فضلك.



تُستخدم في الجمل المنفية أو الاستفهامية (السؤال) - أي **any**

**Examples:**

- We don't have any grapes. ليس لدينا أي عنب.
- Is there any bread in the fridge? هل يوجد خبز في الثلاجة؟



## Exercises on Lessons 6-7

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. How many oranges | ( ) a) some apple juice. |
| 2. We don't have | ( ) b) We have five bananas. |
| 3. Mom, can we make a fruit salad? | ( ) c) any grapes. |
| 4. We need | ( ) d) Yes, that's a good idea. |
| | ( ) e) do they need to buy? |

### 2 Read and complete the dialogue with the words from the box:

(39 LE - butter - three - onions - 11 LE - bread)

**Miss Dina** : Hello. I'd like some bread, please.

**Storekeeper** : Here's the ❶ .................... . Is one loaf OK?

**Miss Dina** : Yes, thank you. I also need three onions.

**Storekeeper** : 1, 2, 3, ❷ .................... – here you are. Is there anything else?

**Miss Dina** : Yes, I need a chicken, a bag of rice, and some butter.

**Storekeeper** : Here's one chicken, and a bag of rice, but I don't have any ❸ .................... .



**Miss Dina** : That's OK.

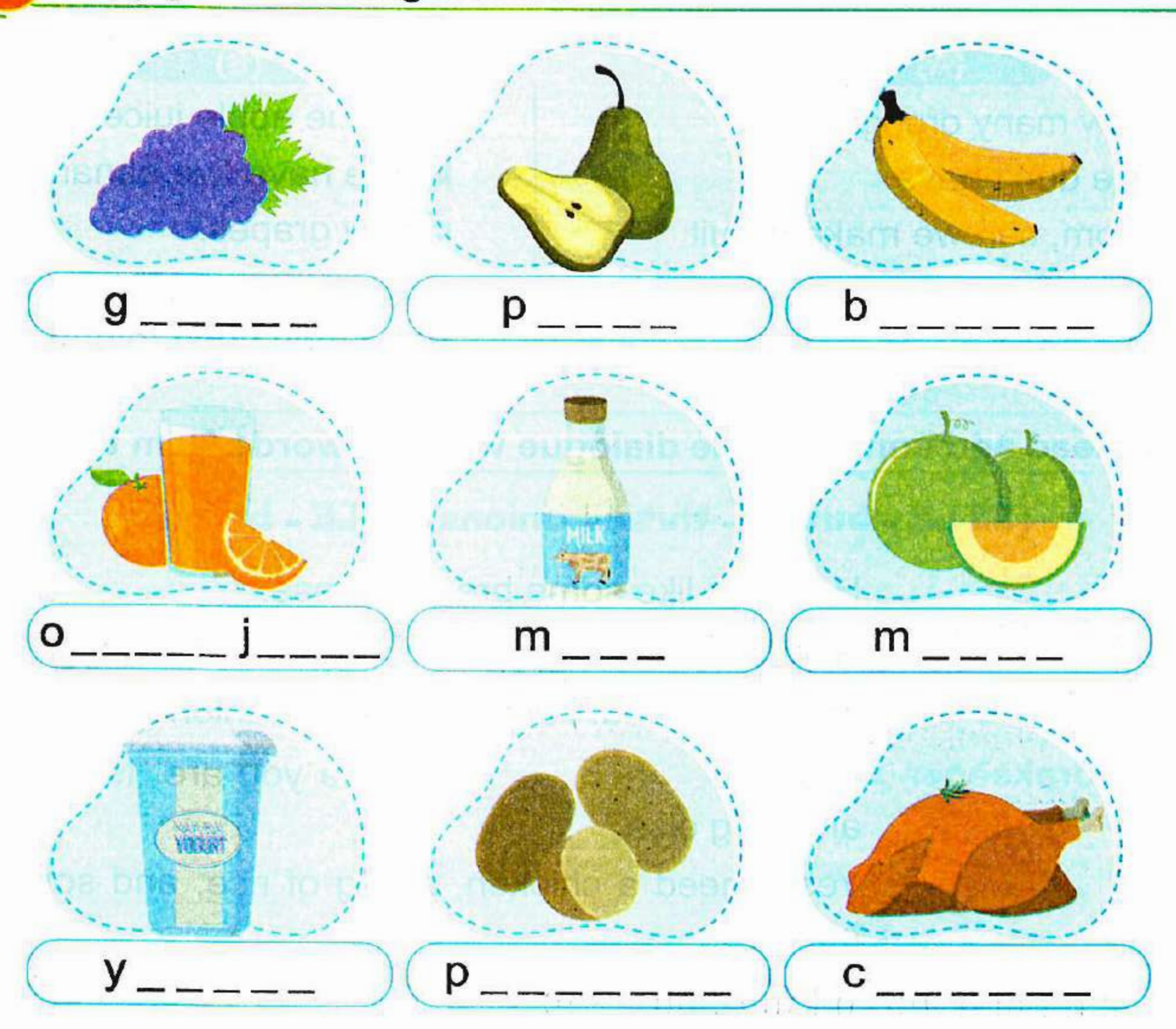
**Storekeeper** : OK, so the bread is 6 EL, the onions are 2 LE, the chicken is 25 LE and the rice is 6 LE. That's ④ ............................ .

**Miss Dina** : Here's 50 LE.

**Storekeeper** : So I owe you ⑤ ............................ change. Here you are!

**Miss Dina** : Thank you. Goodbye!

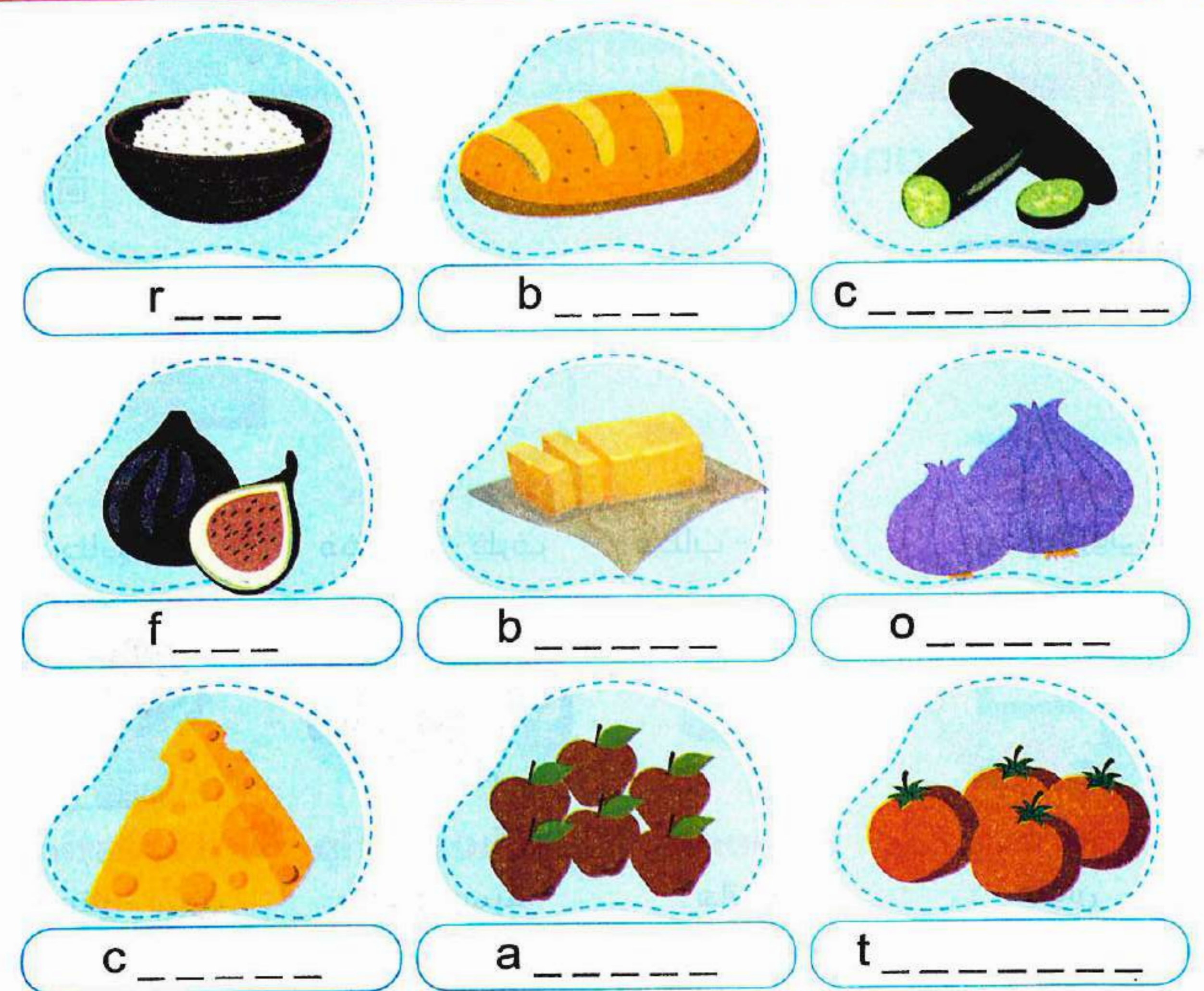
## 3 Supply the missing letters:



g _ _ _ _ _    p _ _ _ _    b _ _ _ _ _ _

o _ _ _ _ _ j _ _ _ _    m _ _ _    m _ _ _ _

y _ _ _ _ _    p _ _ _ _ _ _ _    c _ _ _ _ _ _




## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. We need (some - any) apple juice.
2. We don't have (some - any) grapes.
3. Let's get (some - any) yogurt, too.
4. Is there (something - anything) else?
5. The storekeeper doesn't have (some - any) bread.
6. I need (some - any) milk and some bread.

## 5 Punctuate the following sentences:

1. does mazen want to make a fruit salad ..............................
2. miss dina would like some bread ..............................
3. what does nada need ..............................

## Lessons 8-9 Reading and writing





### Read and repeat


email
بريد إلكتروني


letter
خطاب - جواب


envelope
مظروف - ظرف



stamp
طابع بريد


address
عنوان


phone
هاتف



school trip
رحلة مدرسية


interesting
ممتع - شيق


crafts
حِرف يدوية

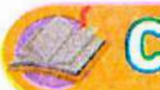
formal
رسمي

informal
غير رسمي

post
يرسل (يبعث) بالبريد

### Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Luxor temple | معبد الأقصر | family party | حفل عائلي |
| museum guide | مرشد المتحف | show us around | يرشدنا - يرينا (المكان) |
| statues | تماثيل | life in the past | الحياة في الماضي |
| towers | أبراج | Imagine. | تخيل. |
| all over Egypt | في كل أنحاء مصر | I hope so. | أتمنى ذلك. |



# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| start | يبدأ | started |
| finish | ينهي | finished |
| press | يضغط | pressed |

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| learn | يتعلّم | learned (learnt) |
| type | يكتب على الكمبيوتر | typed |
| hope | يأمل - يتمنى | hoped |

## Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| send | يبعث - يرسل | sent |
| write | يكتب | wrote |
| know | يعرف | knew |

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| put | يضع | put |
| show | يُري - يعرض | showed |
| see | يرى | saw |

## Read and learn



### Writing a letter
### كتابة خطاب

Dear Mr Gamal, ← The receiver's name اسم المُرسَل إليه

Thank you for letting us come to your store on our school trip. It was very **interesting** and I learned a lot about how to make **crafts**. You have lots of interesting **products** from all over Egypt. My favorite things were the colored baskets. I would like to have a store when I am older because I think it would be fun.

(The letter body نص الخطاب)

Yours sincerely,

Wael Habib ← The sender's name اسم المُرسِل

عزيزي السيد جمال،
شكرًا لك على السماح لنا بالحضور إلى متجرك في رحلتنا المدرسية.
كان الأمر ممتعًا للغاية وتعلمت الكثير عن كيفية صنع الحرف اليدوية. لديك الكثير من المنتجات المثيرة للاهتمام من جميع أنحاء مصر. كانت السلال الملونة هي الأشياء المفضلة لدي. أنا أرغب في الحصول على متجر عندما أكبر سنًا لأنني أعتقد أنه سيكون ممتعًا.
تفضل بقبول فائق الاحترام،
وائل حبيب

## Communication



A **letter** is usually **formal.** You write a letter on paper and you put it in an **envelope.** You write the **address** on the envelope, and you put a **stamp** on it. Then you **post** the letter.

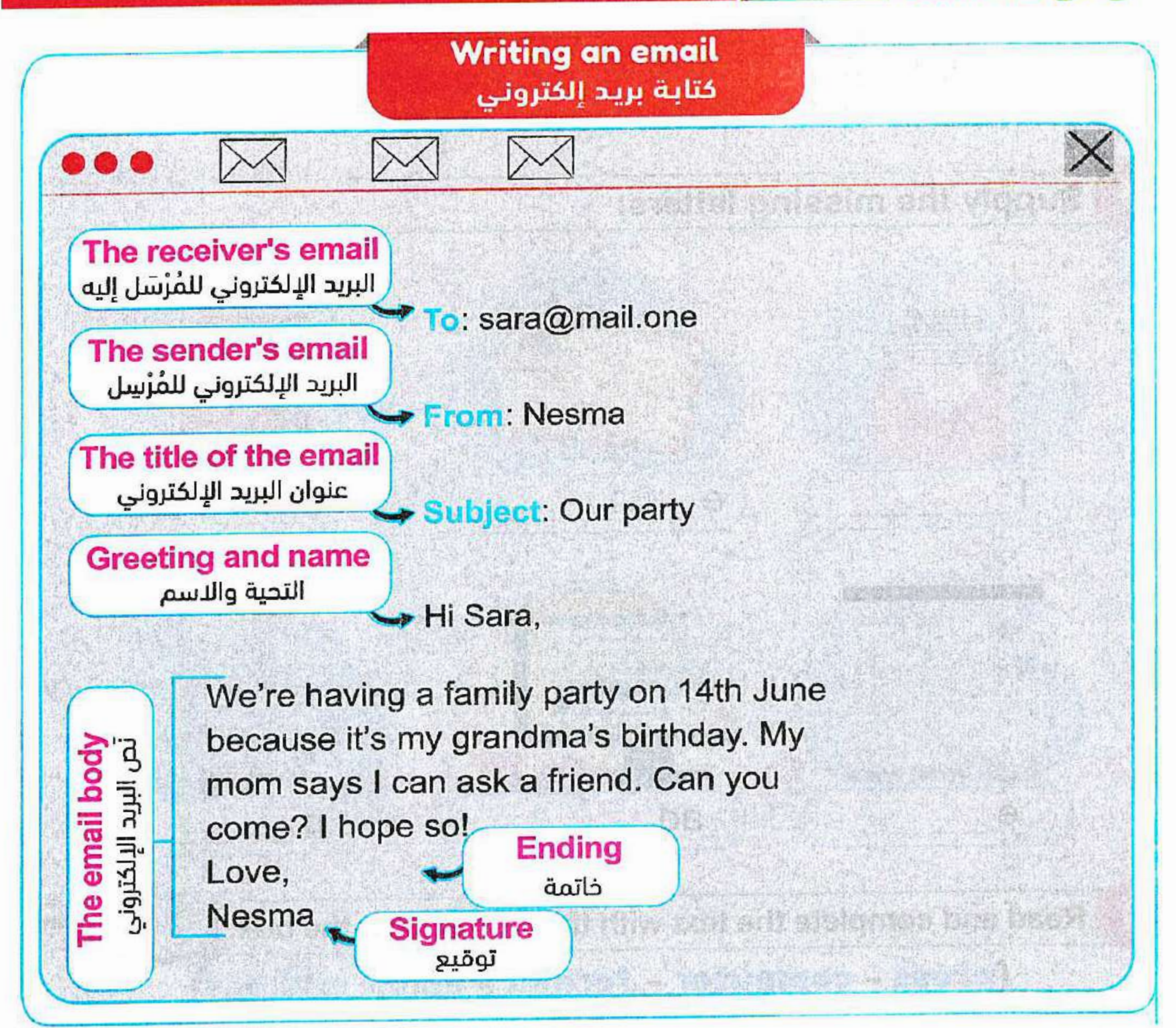
عادةً ما يكون الخطاب رسمي. أنت تكتب رسالة على ورق وتضعها في ظرف. وتكتب العنوان على الظرف وتضع طابع بريد عليه. ثم ترسل الرسالة بالبريد.



An **email** can be **formal** or **informal.** You can send an email to your friend quickly. You write it on a computer or a phone. You type in the **email address**, write the email, and press **'Send'!**

يمكن أن يكون البريد الإلكتروني رسميًا أو غير رسمي. يمكنك إرسال بريد إلكتروني إلى صديقك بسرعة. تكتبه على جهاز كمبيوتر أو هاتف. وتقوم بكتابة عنوان البريد الإلكتروني، تكتب رسالة البريد الإلكتروني، وتضغط على "إرسال"!

## Writing an email
## كتابة بريد إلكتروني




### Note that:

Formal writing is used for serious topics and readers that you don't know well. It doesn't contain contractions and the sentences are long.

تُستخدم الكتابة الرسمية للمواضيع الجادة والقراء الذين لا تعرفهم جيدًا. ولا تحتوي على اختصارات وتكون الجمل طويلة.

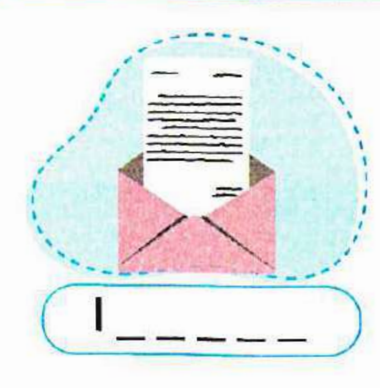
Informal writing is more relaxed and used for writing with friends or anyone you are familiar with. It contains contractions and the sentences are short.

الكتابة غير الرسمية أكثر بساطةً وتُستخدم للكتابة مع الأصدقاء أو أي شخص تعرفه. وتحتوي على اختصارات وتكون الجمل قصيرة.



## Exercises on Lessons 8-9

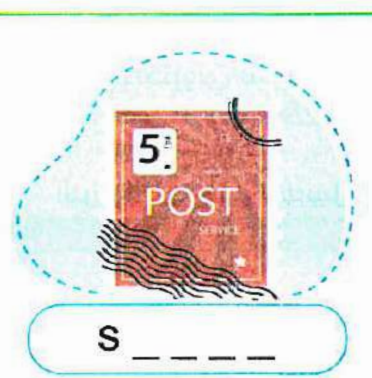
### 1 Supply the missing letters:



l _ _ _ _ _



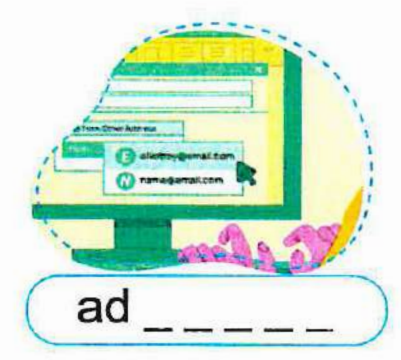
e _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _



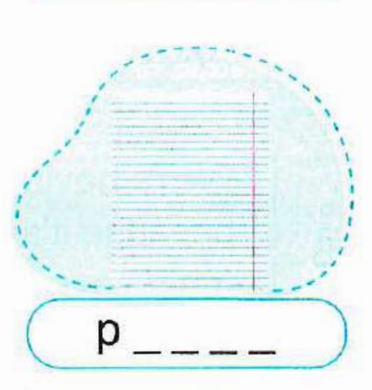

s _ _ _ _



e _ _ _ _



ad _ _ _ _ _



p _ _ _ _

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:




(**press** - **computer** - **formal** - **email address**)

An email can be ❶ .................... or informal. You can write an email on your ❷ .................... or phone. Type in the ❸ .................... . Then write the email and ❹ .................... 'Send'.

### 3 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:




(**a letter** - **Bye** - **hi** - **yours sincerely**)

1. Start .................... with **Dear** and the person's name.
2. Finish a letter with .................... and your name.
3. Start an email with .................... and the person's name.
4. Finish an email with **Love** or .................... and your name.



## 4 Read the letter and answer the questions:




Dear Mr Gamal,

Thank you for letting us come to your store on our school trip. It was very interesting and I learned a lot about how to make crafts. You have lots of interesting products from all over Egypt. My favorite things were the colored baskets.

I would like to have a store when I am older because I think it would be fun.

Yours sincerely,

Wael Habib

1. Who is the letter to? ..............................
2. Who is the letter from? ..............................
3. Why is he writing a letter? ..............................
4. Is it a formal or informal letter? ..............................

## 5 Read the email and answer the questions:

Student's Book

**To:** sara@mail.one

**Subject:** Our party

Hi Sara,

We're having a family party on 14th June because it's my grandma's birthday. My mom says I can ask a friend. Can you come? I hope so!

Love,

Nesma

1. Who is the email to? ..............................
2. Who is the email from? ..............................
3. Why is she writing an email? ..............................
4. Is it a formal or informal email? ..............................

## Lessons 10-11 Learn Phonics with Busy Bee! & Social Studies



### The (air) and (ear) sounds: PHONICS



**(air)**

The letters (air) make the sound /eə/



hair
شعر



chair
كرسي

**(ear)**

The letters (ear) make the sound /ɪə/



ears
أذنان



beard
لحية





### Read and repeat



community
مجتمع



principal
مدير مدرسة



teacher
مُعلّم



firefighter
رجل إطفاء



police officer
ضابط شرطة



doctor
طبيب





nurse
ممرضة



emergency
حالة الطوارئ




**storekeeper**
صاحب محل - بائع


**market seller**
بائع في السوق


**waiter**
نادل (جرسون)


**chef**
طاه - طباخ

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **sick** | مريض | **holiday** | إجازة |
| **important** | هام - مهم | **bring** | يُحضر |
| **town** | مدينة صغيرة | **work** | يعمل |

## Prepositions & Expressions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **in charge of** | مسئول عن | **every weekend** | كل نهاية أسبوع |
| **all together** | معًا جميعًا | **get better** | يتحسّن |
| **lunchtime** | وقت الغداء | **keep us safe** | يحافظون على سلامتنا |
| **break time** | وقت الفسحة | **different people** | أُناس مختلفون |



## Read and learn


1 My teacher has long black hair.


2 My grandpa has a gray beard.


3 My grandma is sitting on a chair.


4 My rabbit has long ears.





My sister has red hair and a blue chair.



My uncle has a brown beard.



The rabbit has big ears.

## People in our community

There are lots of different people in our community.

يوجد الكثير من الأشخاص المختلفين في مجتمعنا.

**1**



I love my family. I live with my mom, my dad, my brother and my sister. We see our grandparents every weekend. I have an aunt, two uncles, and three cousins, too. It's fun when we are all together.

أنا أحب عائلتي. أنا أعيش مع أمي وأبي وأخي وأختي. نحن نرى أجدادنا في نهاية كل أسبوع. أنا لدي عمة وعمّان وثلاثة أبناء عمومة، أيضًا. يكون الأمر ممتعًا عندما نكون كلنا سويًا.

**2**



At school, there are lots of people who help us. My teacher is very clever. The **principal** is in charge of the school. There are people to help at lunchtime and breaktime, too.

في المدرسة، يوجد الكثير من الناس الذين يساعدوننا. مُعلمي ماهر جدًا. المدير هو المسؤول عن المدرسة. ويوجد أشخاص يساعدوننا وقت الغداء ووقت الاستراحة، أيضًا.



3



If we are **sick**, people at the hospital help us. There are doctors and nurses to help us get better.

إذا مرضنا، يساعدنا الناس في المستشفى. يوجد أطباء وممرضات لمساعدتنا على أن نتحسن.

4




Police officers and firefighters keep us safe. They can help in an **emergency**.

ضباط الشرطة ورجال الإطفاء يحافظون على سلامتنا. يمكنهم المساعدة في حالات الطوارئ.

5



We buy things from stores in town. People have lots of different stores, so we can buy the things we need.

نحن نشتري الأشياء من المتاجر في المدينة. الناس لديهم الكثير من المتاجر المختلفة، حتى نتمكن من شراء الأشياء التي نحتاجها.

## AB Activity Book

1



This is my family. I live with my mom, dad, sister and brother. I see my cousins in the holidays and I visit my grandparents on the weekend.

هذه عائلتي. أنا أعيش مع أمي وأبي وأختي وأخي. أرى أبناء عمومتي في الإجازات وأزور أجدادي في عطلة نهاية الأسبوع.

**2**



Police officers and firefighters are important because they keep us safe.

ضباط الشرطة ورجال الإطفاء مهمون لأنهم يحافظون على سلامتنا.

**3**



Many teachers work at our school. Our principal is Mr Sayed. He is in charge of the school. Teachers help us at lunchtime and break time, too.

يعمل العديد من المعلمين في مدرستنا. مديرنا هو الأستاذ سيد وهو المسؤول عن المدرسة. يساعدنا المعلمون في وقت الغداء ووقت الاستراحة، أيضًا.

**4**



Doctors and nurses help us when we are sick. They work at the hospital.

يساعدنا الأطباء والممرضات عندما نمرض. إنهم يعملون في المستشفى.

**5**



Storekeepers and market sellers sell us food and clothes. Chefs cook food in restaurants and waiters bring the food to our table.

يبيع لنا أصحاب المتاجر والباعة في السوق الطعام والملابس. يقوم الطهاة بطهي الطعام في المطاعم ويقوم النوادل بإحضار الطعام إلى طاولتنا.

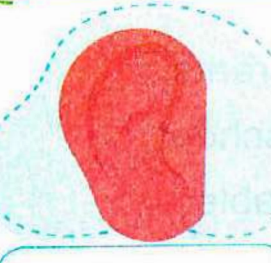


## Exercises on Lessons 10-11

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. I visit my grandparents | a) buy things in stores. |
| 2. Doctors and nurses work | b) in an emergency. |
| 3. I live with | c) on the weekend. |
| 4. A police officer can help | d) at the hospital. |
| | e) my mom and dad. |

### 2 Complete the words with (air) or (ear):



e _ _



h _ _ _



c _ _ _ _



b _ _ _ _

### 3 Supply the missing letters:



f _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _



n _ _ _ _



s _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _



d _ _ _ _ _



w _ _ _ _ _

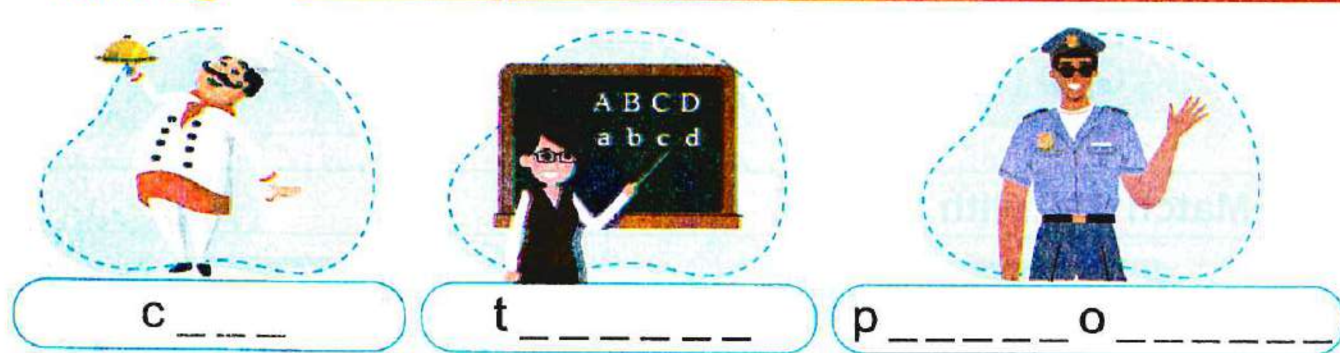


p _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _





Unit 10




c _ _ _ t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ p _ _ _ _ _ o _ _ _ _ _ _ _

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

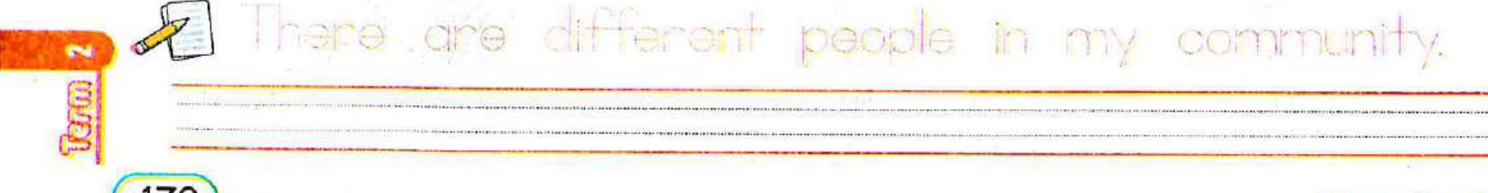
1. Police officers and (chefs - firefighters - doctors) keep us safe.
2. Many (teachers - farmers - storekeepers) work at our school.
3. Doctors and (officers - waiters - nurses) help us when we are sick.
4. Storekeepers and market (buyers - teachers - sellers) sell us food and clothes.
5. (Chefs - Firefighters - Waiters) cook food in restaurants.
6. Our (doctor - principal - seller) is in charge of the school.
7. (Farmers - Waiters - Chefs) bring the food to our table.

## 5 Read and mark (✔) or (✘):

My family isn't big. I live with my mom, dad, sister and brother. I see my cousins in the holidays and I visit my grandparents on the weekend.

1. My family is small. ( )
2. There are five people in my family. ( )
3. I see my cousins on the weekend. ( )
4. I visit my grandparents in the holidays. ( )

## 6 Copy the following sentence:





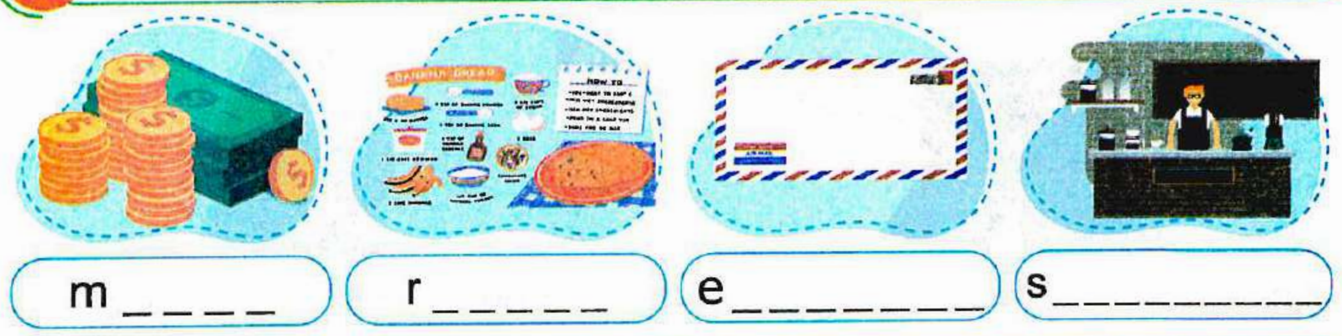




## 1 Match "A" with "B": (4Ms)

| (A) | (B) |
| --- | --- |
| 1. What did you do today? | a) No, I don't. |
| 2. Do you prefer cooking? | b) to buy some bread. |
| 3. We need to | c) to buy meat. |
| 4. I went to the bakery | d) I went shopping. |
| | e) buy some milk. |

## 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)



m _ _ _ _    r _ _ _ _ _    e _ _ _ _ _ _ _    s _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

## 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. I went to the shoe store to buy shoes (but - and - so) boots.
2. Do you enjoy (watch - to watch - watching) TV?
3. I like chocolate, (but - because - so) I don't like chips.
4. He doesn't like (drink - drinking - drinks) tea.
5. I was thirsty, (so - but - because) I drank 2 bottles of water.
6. We don't have (an - some - any) bread.
7. She (go - went - is going) to the supermarket yesterday.
8. I'm making juice (so - but - because) I like drinking juice.

## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

A letter is usually formal. You write a letter on paper and you put it in an envelope. You write the address on the envelope, and you put a stamp on it. Then you post the letter.



## Test 10

1. We write a letter on the computer. (   )
2. We put the letter in a stamp. (   )
3. We write the address on the envelope. (   )
4. We post the letter. (   )

**5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)**

1. did - yesterday - do - What - you? ................................ ?
2. recipe - I - a - have. ................................ .
3. does - How - cost - much - it? ................................ ?

**6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)**

1. It's ................................ .
2. Doctors help ............ people.
3. The ...... is in charge of the school.
4. I'd like some ................................ .

**7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)**

I love my community.

........................................................................

Theme (4): Communication

# Unit 11

# Let's sing!






## Objectives

**Vocabulary**

**Instruments:** bagpipe, flute, guitar, oud, reed pipe, tambourine, violin; costume, dance, dancer, folk music, folktale, musician, rhythm, show, sing, song, tune, national anthem

**Celebrations:** decorate, Eid Al Fitr, lantern, meal, present, Sham El-Nessim

**Language**

- What a great lesson!
- What an amazing show!
- He wants the music teacher to play the flute.
- Can you sing a song, please?

**Reading** - A text about celebrations

**Phonics** **spr:** spring, sprint **str:** string, instrument, strong

**Life skills** **Respect for diversity**

**Values**

**Tolerance and acceptance of the other**
**Respect**
**Cooperation:** A music band
**Love of homeland**

**Issues and challenges** **National unity**

**Integrated cross-curriculum topics**

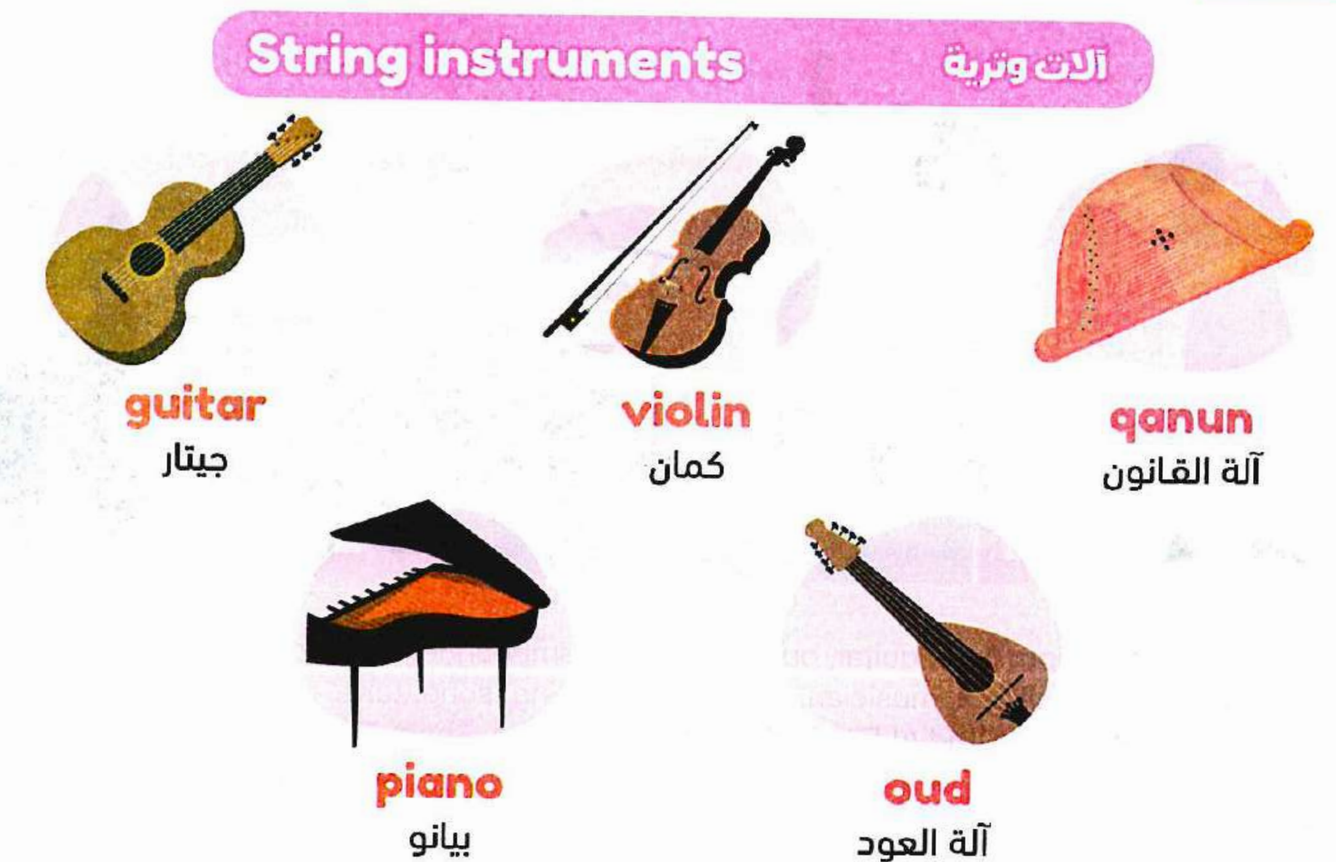
**Geography:** regional music in Egypt
**Music:** different musical instruments and their sounds

## Lessons 1-8-9 Let's sing! & Music & Values: Cooperation



### Read and repeat






### Wind instruments آلات النفخ



flute
ناي



bagpipe
مزمار القربة



reed pipe
مزمار من القصب (الخيزران)

## Percussion instruments آلات النقر



**drum**
طبلة



**tambourine**
الدُف - الرق



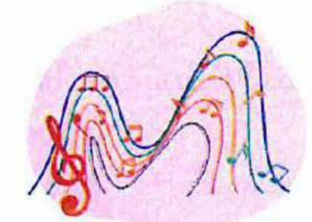
**cymbals**
آلة الصنج (صاجات)



**piano**
بيانو

**لاحظ أن:**

البيانو يعتبر آلة وترية وأيضًا آلة نقر.



**rhythm**
إيقاع



**tune**
نغمة - لحن



**band**
فرقة موسيقية



**concert**
حفلة موسيقية

### Extra Vocabulary

| English | Arabic | English | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|
| music | موسيقى | amazing show | عرض مذهل |
| musician | موسيقار | beautiful sound | صوت جميل |
| lovely song | أغنية جميلة | fantastic | رائع |
| favorite instrument | آلة مفضلة | interesting | ممتع - شيق |
| difficult | صعب | singer | مغني |
| different ways | طرق مختلفة | play (n) | مسرحية |
| ancient Egypt | مصر القديمة | famous | مشهور |
| other countries | دول أخرى | fingers | أصابع اليد |
| made of wood | مصنوع من الخشب | very well | بشكل جيد جدًا |



## Verbs

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **strum** | يعزف على أوتار الآلة | **shake** | يهز - يرج |
| **play** | يعزف | **keep** | يحافظ |
| **blow** | ينفخ | **love** | يحب |
| **hit** | يضرب | **sing** | يغني |

## Vocabulary Study




**rhythm** : a regular pattern of sounds
نمط منتظم من الأصوات

**tune** : musical notes to make a song
نوتات موسيقية لعمل أغنية



## Read and learn



### Let's sing!



## Types of instruments

We can play instruments in different ways.

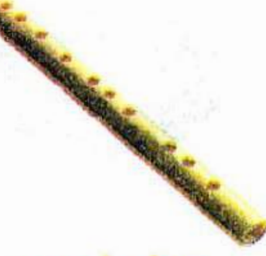
يمكننا العزف على الآلات بطرق مختلفة.



bagpipe

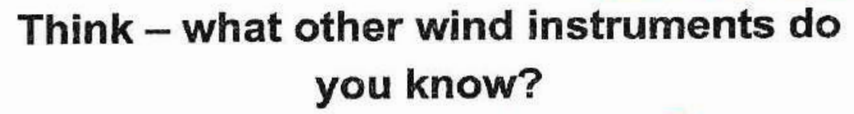
### Wind instruments آلات النفخ

We play wind instruments by blowing them. This is a **bagpipe**. It is a very old instrument. People played it in Ancient Egypt. People play the bagpipe in other countries now, too. It is very famous in Scotland in the UK! This is a **reed pipe**. It is also a traditional Egyptian instrument. It is made of wood with a **reed**.



reed pipe

نحن نعزف على آلات النفخ عن طريق نفخها. هذا مزمار القربة. إنها آلة موسيقية قديمة جدًا. عزف عليها الناس في مصر القديمة. يعزف الناس على مزمار القربة في بلدان أخرى الآن، أيضًا. إنها مشهورة جدًا في اسكتلندا في المملكة المتحدة! هذا مزمار من القصب. وهي أيضًا آلة مصرية تقليدية. وهي مصنوعة من الخشب مع القصب.



**Think – what other wind instruments do you know?**

فكر _ما هي آلات النفخ الأخرى التي تعرفها؟



oud

### String instruments آلات وترية

We strum the **strings** on a **string instrument** to make music. It can be difficult to learn how to do this, but it is interesting. This **qanun** has a beautiful sound. There are lots of traditional string instruments in Egypt. What are these instruments?



qanun

نقوم بالعزف على أوتار الآلة الوترية لصنع الموسيقى. قد يكون من الصعب تعلم كيفية القيام بذلك، لكنه مثير للاهتمام. هذا القانون له صوت جميل. هناك الكثير من الآلات الوترية التقليدية في مصر. ما هي هذه الآلات؟

## Percussion instruments (آلات النقر (القرع

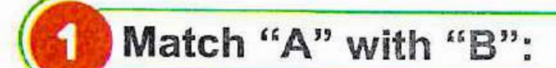
With **percussion instruments**, you hit or shake them to make a sound. This can keep a rhythm in music. People play the **tambourine**, **drums** or **cymbals** to keep a rhythm.

باستخدام الآلات الإيقاعية (آلات القرع)، تضربها أو تهزها لإصدار صوت. هذا يمكن أن يحافظ على إيقاع الموسيقى. يعزف الناس على الدف أو الطبول أو الصنج للحفاظ على الإيقاع.


tambourine


drum


cymbals



## Exercises on Lessons 1-8-9

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. The guitar is a | a) wind instrument. |
| 2. The drum is a | b) amazing show! |
| 3. What an | c) very well. |
| 4. The flute is a | d) percussion instrument. |
| | e) string instrument. |

### 2 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:




**(singer - band - musicians)**

A group of musicians is called a band. People in a ❶ .................... play different instruments. The ❷ .................... sound good when they play together. The ❸ .................... is the person who sings the song.

## 3 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

There is a band in the street. They can play very well. One of them can play the violin and the bagpipe. Another one can sing and dance very well. Their instruments are fantastic.

1. One of the band can play the violin. ( )
2. They can't play very well. ( )
3. Their instruments are fantastic. ( )
4. One of them can dance and sing. ( )

## 4 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:




(wind – percussion – string)

1. We hit a .................................. instrument with our hands.
2. We play .................................. instruments by blowing them with our mouth.
3. We shake a .................................. instrument to make a sound.
4. We strum a .................................. instrument with our fingers.

## 5 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts:

1



She's playing the .................................. .

2



She's playing the .................................. .

3



He's playing the .................................. .

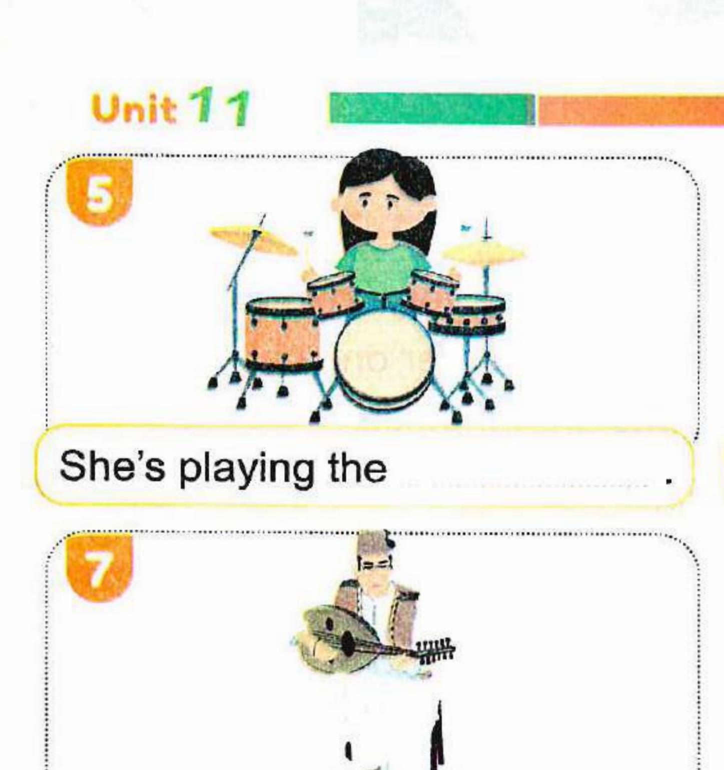
4



She's playing the .................................. .



5



She's playing the ................................ .

6



He's playing the ................................ .

7

He's playing the ................................ .

8

She's playing the ................................ .

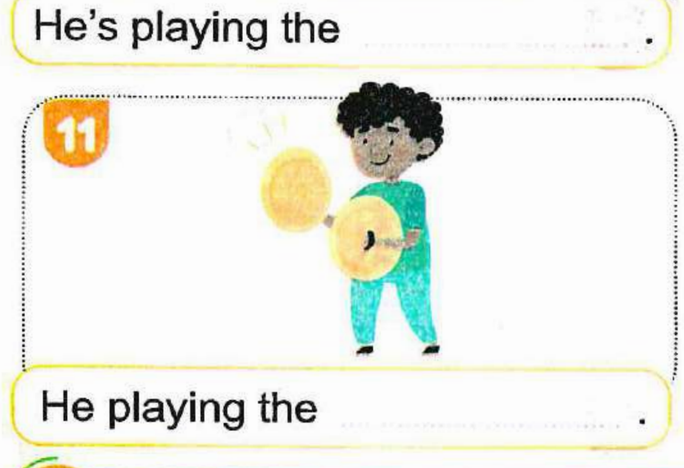
9

He's playing the ................................ .

10

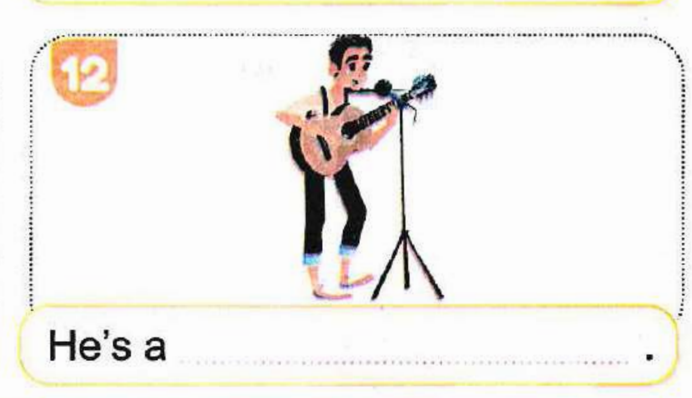
She's playing the ................................ .

11



He playing the ................................ .

12



He's a ................................ .



## 6 Copy the following sentence:

What instrument do you like best?

..................................................................................................

## Lesson 2 Reading





### Read and repeat






| performers | traditional show | costumes | musician |
|---|---|---|---|
| مؤدون (فرقة موسيقية) | عرض تقليدي | أزياء - ملابس | موسيقار |






| dancer | folk dance | instruments | hold a stick |
|---|---|---|---|
| راقص - راقصة | رقص شعبي | آلات موسيقية | يمسك عصا |

| traditional song | folktale | folk music | national anthem |
|---|---|---|---|
| أغنية تقليدية | قصة شعبية | موسيقى شعبية | النشيد الوطني |

### Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| south of Egypt | جنوب مصر | dance (n) | رقص |
| stories | قصص | old | قديم |
| common | شائع - منتشر | wear | يرتدي |
| moral value | قيمة أخلاقية | tell | يخبر |
| performance | أداء - عرض | remember | يتذكر |



| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **a group of people** | مجموعة من الناس | **respect** | يحترم |
| **actor** | ممثل | **in pairs** | في أزواج |

## Vocabulary Study




**Assaya** : is a stick that dancers hold in a traditional dance from the South of Egypt.
العصاية هي عصا يحملها الراقصون في رقصة تقليدية من جنوب مصر.

**The national anthem** : is a national song that the people of a country sing to remember and respect their country.
النشيد الوطني هو أغنية وطنية يغنيها أهل البلد لتذكر واحترام بلدهم.

**Folktales** : are stories that are common among a group of people and have a moral value.
الحكايات الشعبية هي قصص شائعة بين مجموعة من الناس ولها قيمة أخلاقية.



## Read and learn

### A performance

1



These performers are giving a traditional show. They are singing traditional **songs**, playing **instruments** and doing a **folk dance**. What instruments can you see?

يقدم هؤلاء الفنانون عرضًا تقليديًا. إنهم يغنون الأغاني التقليدية. ويعزفون على الآلات الموسيقية ويرقصون الرقص الشعبي. ماهي الآلات الموسيقية التي تستطيع رؤيتها؟

2



The Assaya dance is a traditional **dance** from the south of Egypt. The **dancers** hold a stick called an assaya. These men are **dancing** in pairs.

رقصة العصايا هي رقصة تقليدية من جنوب مصر. يحمل الراقصون عصا تسمى عصايا. هؤلاء الرجال يرقصون في ثنائيات.



3 These children are singing the **national anthem**. When do you sing the national anthem?

هؤلاء الأطفال يغنون النشيد الوطني. متى تغني النشيد الوطني؟



4 These actors are performing a traditional **folktale**. There are many folktales in Egypt. The actors are wearing beautiful **costumes**.

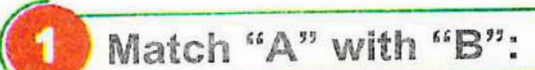
هؤلاء الممثلون يؤدون حكاية شعبية تقليدية. هناك العديد من الحكايات الشعبية في مصر. يرتدي الممثلون أزياء جميلة.



5 These musicians are playing **folk music**. This music is very old and they are playing traditional instruments.

يعزف هؤلاء الموسيقيون الموسيقى الشعبية. هذه الموسيقى قديمة جدًا، وهم يعزفونها على الآلات الموسيقية التقليدية.



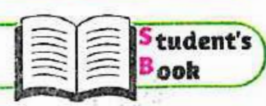


## Exercises on Lesson 2

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. The children are singing | ☐ a) playing folk music. |
| 2. The actors are wearing | ☐ b) a traditional show. |
| 3. The performers are giving | ☐ c) the national anthem. |
| 4. The musicians are | ☐ d) beautiful costumes. |
| | ☐ e) traditional instruments. |

### 2 Choose the correct answer:




1. They're singing a (sing - song).
2. They're (wearing - playing) costumes.

3. They're telling a (folktale - folk) music.
4. They're performing a (dance - dancing).
5. The (dancer - dance) has a beautiful costume.
6. They're playing (folk music - folk dance).
7. They have traditional (musicians - instruments).

## 3 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

The performers are giving a traditional show. They are singing traditional songs, playing instruments and doing a folk dance. The children are singing the national anthem. The actors are performing a traditional folktale.

1. The performers are giving a traditional show. ( )
2. The performers are doing a folk dance. ( )
3. The actors are singing the national anthem. ( )
4. The children are performing a traditional folktale. ( )

## 4 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. are - They - songs - traditional - singing. ✓ ................................ .
2. hold - stick - The dancers - a. ✓ ................................ .
3. Egypt - There are - in - folktales - many. ✓ ................................ .
4. old - very - This - is - music. ✓ ................................ .

## 5 Read, guess and write:




1. A stick that dancers hold in a traditional dance from the South of Egypt is an ................................ .
2. A national song that the people of a country sing to remember and respect their country is an ................................ .
3. Stories that are common among a group of people and have a moral value are ................................ .



## Lessons 3-4-5 Language use & Learn phonics with Busy Bee!





### Read and repeat

**Sentences & Expressions**

| | |
|---|---|
| What an amazing show! | يا له من عرض مدهش! |
| What a beautiful rug! | يا لها من سجادة جميلة! |
| What a brilliant song! | يا لها من أغنية رائعة! |
| What an interesting story! | يا لها من قصة ممتعة! |
| What a wonderful costume! | يا له من زي رائع! |
| What a great movie! | يا له من فيلم رائع! |
| What a colorful carpet! | يا لها من سجادة ملونة! |
| What a funny story! | يا لها من قصة مضحكة! |
| What an exciting movie! | يا له من فيلم مثير! |

**Extra Vocabulary**

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| want | يريد - يرغب | Let's | هيا بنا |
| ask | يسأل | take us | يأخذنا |
| tell us | يخبرنا | help | يساعد |
| read | يقرأ | tidy | يرتب |





## The (str) and (spr) sounds: PHONICS



### (str)

The letters (str) make the sound /str/



string
خيط

strong
قوي

instrument
آلة موسيقية

### (spr)



The letters (spr) make the sound /spr/



spring
فصل الربيع

sprint
يجري سريعًا



## Read and learn



1. An oud is a string instrument.



2. There are folktales about spring.

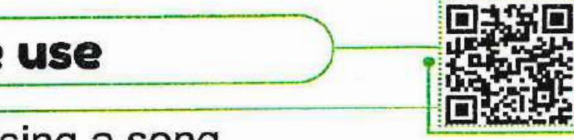


3. He is very strong!



4. My sister can sprint.





## Language use



He wants the class to sing a song.
هو يريد أن يغني الفصل أغنية.



Let's ask the teacher to tell us a folktale.
هيّا نطلب من المعلم أن يخبرنا حكاية شعبية.



She wants the music teacher to play the flute.
إنها تريد من مدرسة الموسيقى أن تعزف على الفلوت.



Let's ask our parents to take us to the show.
هيا بنا نطلب من والدينا أن يأخذونا إلى العرض.



## Language

- **We can use (What ...) with nouns to show approval.**

يمكننا استخدام (What ...) مع الأسماء لنظهر الاستحسان أحيانًا أو الموافقة على شيء ما.



**What + a/an + صفة + اسم**

لاحظ صيغ الاستحسان الآتية باستخدام (What) وكيفية الرد عليها:

**Examples:**

- What an interesting story! — يا لها من قصة شيقة!
  - Yes, I love it, too. — نعم، أنا أحبها، أيضًا.
- What a wonderful costume! — يا له من زي رائع!
  - Yes, it looks beautiful. — نعم، يبدو جميلًا.
- What a great movie! — يا له من فيلم رائع!
  - Yes, I love funny movies. — نعم، أنا أحب الأفلام المضحكة.



■ **When you ask or want someone to do something:**

عندما تطلب أو تريد من شخص ما أن يفعل شيء ما:




**Examples:**

- Dad, can you sing a song, please?
  أبي، هل تستطيع أن تغني أغنية، من فضلك؟
- Fares, can you be in our show, please?
  فارس، هل يمكنك أن تكون في برنامجنا، من فضلك؟
- Nesma, can you play the guitar, please?
  نسمة، هل تستطيعين أن تعزفي على الجيتار، من فضلك؟
- Can you tidy the classroom, please?
  هل تستطيع ترتيب الفصل، من فضلك؟

**ask** يطلب – **want** يريد - يرغب

■ **لاحظ أن (ask - want) يتبعان بـ (مصدر الفعل + to)، مصدر الفعل هو أصل الفعل، أي هو التصريف الأول للفعل بدون أي اضافات.**

**Examples:**

- He wants his sister to play the guitar.
  هو يريد أن تعزف أخته على الجيتار.
- Let's ask Dad to sing a song.
  هيا نطلب من أبي أن يغني أغنية.
- The teacher wants us to tidy the classroom.
  المعلم يريدنا أن نرتب الفصل.
- Let's ask your brother to be in our show.
  هيّا نطلب من أخيك أن يكون في برنامجنا.

■ **لاحظ أن (Let's) تُتبع بـ (مصدر الفعل) بدون (to).**



## Exercises on Lessons 3-4-5

### 1 Match "A" with "B":



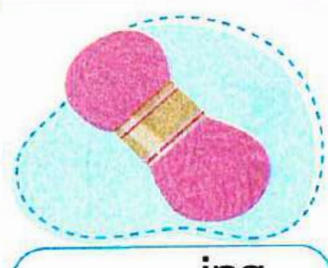

**(A)**

1. He wants his sister to play the guitar.
2. "Let's ask Dad to sing a song."
3. The teacher wants us to tidy the classroom.
4. "Let's ask your brother to be in our show."

**(B)**

- [ ] a) "Dad, can you sing a song, please?
- [ ] b) "Fares, can you be in our show, please?"
- [ ] c) "Nesma, can you play the guitar, please?"
- [ ] d) "Can you tidy the classroom, please?

### 2 Complete the words with (spr) or (str):



_ _ _ ing



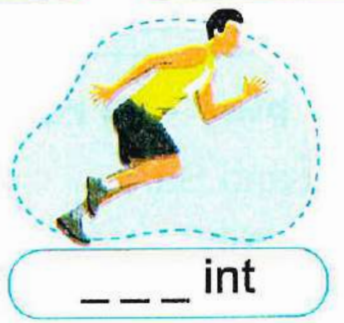
_ _ _ ong



in _ _ _ ument



_ _ _ ing



_ _ _ int

### 3 Choose the best answer:




1. What an interesting story! (Yes, I have it, too. - Because it's exciting.)
2. What a wonderful costume! (No, it's colorful. - Yes, it looks beautiful.)

3. What a great movie! (Yes, I love funny movies. - It's a funny movie.)

## 4 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box: Student's Book

**(to - want - ask - Let's - us)**

1. The teacher wants .................... to practice for the show.
2. Can you .................... your parents to help you with your costumes?
3. .................... ask our teacher to play the violin.
4. Mom and Dad .................... us to tidy our room.
5. Our teacher wants us .................... learn the national anthem.

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: Activity Book

1. the dancers - for us - We want - to dance. ✅ .........................
2. wants - Faisal - the guitar - to play. ✅ .........................
3. wants me - my room - Mom - to tidy. ✅ .........................
4. a cake - Grandma - to make - Let's ask. ✅ .........................
5. football - with me - my brother - I want - to play. ✅ .........................
6. to read us - Let's ask - a story - Dad. ✅ .........................

## 6 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box: Activity Book

**(to tidy - to play - to read - to sing - to help - to take)**

1. We want Lina and Sara .................... a song.
2. Let's ask Grandpa .................... the violin.
3. Let's ask our parents .................... us to a show.
4. Our teachers wants us .................... the classroom.
5. Let's ask Mom .................... us a folktale.
6. I want you .................... me with my homework.

## Lessons 6-7 Reading: Celebrations





### Read and repeat



**celebrate**
يحتفل



**decorate**
يزين - يزخرف



**colorful balloons**
بالونات ملونة



**make a picnic**
يقوم بنزهة خلوية



**park**
منتزه - حديقة عامة



**presents**
هدايا

**new clothes**
ملابس جديدة

**special meal**
وجبة خاصة - مميزة



**garden**
حديقة



**palace**
قصر



**mosque**
مسجد



**dye**
يصبغ - يلون

### Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **amazing day** | يوم مذهل | **our home** | بيتنا |
| **different things** | أشياء مختلفة | **friendly** | ودود - محبوب |
| **happy** | سعيد | **everybody** | كل شخص |
| **during** | خلال - أثناء | **outside** | بالخارج |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **the start of spring** | بداية الربيع | **boat trip** | رحلة بالقارب |
| **paint** | دهان - طلاء - يلون | **beach** | شاطيء |
| **flowers** | زهور | **cookies** | بسكويت |
| **pretty** | جميل | **hard** | صلب |

# Conjugation of Verbs

## Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| listen to | يستمع إلى | listened to | استمع إلى |
| visit | يزور | visited | زار |
| look | يبدو | looked | بدا |
| use | يستخدم - يستعمل | used | استخدم - استعمل |
| celebrate | يحتفل | celebrated | احتفل |
| decorate | يزين - يزخرف | decorated | زيّن - زخرفَ |
| paint | يدهن - يلون | painted | دهنَ - لونَ |
| cook | يطبخ - يطهي | cooked | طبخَ - طهى |

## Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past | |
|---|---|---|---|
| put up | يُقيم - ينصب | put up | أقام - نصبَ |
| give | يعطي | gave | أعطى |
| eat | يأكل | ate | أكل |
| buy | يشتري | bought | اشترى |



## Read and learn





# Eid al-Fitr



I love celebrating Eid al-Fitr with my family and friends. We **decorate** our home, so everything looks beautiful. In the morning, I have a special breakfast with my family. Then we visit my aunt and uncle and my cousins. We often buy new clothes for Eid. I like wearing my new clothes. We go to the **park** and see our friends.

أنا أحب الاحتفال بعيد الفطر مع عائلتي وأصدقائي. نحن نزيّن منزلنا، لذلك كل شيء يبدو جميلًا. في الصباح، أتناول وجبة إفطار مميزة مع عائلتي. ثم نزور عمتي وعمي وأبناء عمومتي. غالبًا ما نشتري ملابس جديدة للعيد. أنا أحب ارتداء ملابسي الجديدة. نحن نذهب إلى الحديقة ونرى أصدقائنا.



At the **park**, there are colorful balloons to decorate the trees. Everyone is very happy and friendly. There are lots of good things to eat at Eid al-Fitr. I love the kahk cookies. My family has a big **meal** with lots of different things to eat. We also give **presents**. What an amazing day!



في الحديقة، يوجد بالونات ملونة لتزيين الأشجار. الجميع سعداء وودودون للغاية. يوجد الكثير من الأشياء الجيدة لنتناولها في عيد الفطر. أنا أحب تناول الكعك المحلى. عائلتي لديها وجبة كبيرة مع الكثير من الأشياء المختلفة لتناولها. نحن أيضًا نقدم الهدايا. يا له من يوم رائع!

# Sham El-Nessim





I love celebrating **Sham El-Nessim**. It's the start of spring, and it's my favorite time of year. My brother and I always decorate eggs for Sham El-Nessim. My mom cooks eggs until they are hard, then we use paint to **dye** them different colors. They look very pretty.

Everybody wants to be outside at Sham El-Nessim. My mom and dad make a big picnic. We live in Alexandria, and we go to the gardens at Montazah Palace to eat our picnic. There are lots of beautiful flowers, and we can see the sea, too.

أنا أحب الاحتفال بشم النسيم. إنه بداية الربيع، وهو وقتي المفضل في السنة. أنا وأخي دائمًا نزين البيض لشم النسيم. أمي تطهو البيض حتى يصبح صلبًا، ثم نستخدم الطلاء لصبغه بألوان مختلفة. يبدو جميل جدًا.

الجميع يريد أن يكون في الخارج في شم النسيم. أمي وأبي يقومان بنزهة كبيرة. نحن نعيش في الإسكندرية، ونذهب إلى حدائق قصر المنتزه لتناول الطعام في نزهتنا. يوجد الكثير من الزهور الجميلة، ويمكننا مشاهدة البحر، أيضًا.



**People in Cairo visit parks to celebrate Sham El-Nessim.**

يزور الناس في القاهرة الحدائق للاحتفال بشم النسيم.



**Some people celebrate the day by going on a boat trip.**

يحتفل بعض الناس باليوم من خلال الذهاب في رحلة على متن قارب.



**People in Hurghada can go to the beach for a picnic.**

يستطيع الناس فى الغردقة الذهاب إلى الشاطئ للنزهة.



## Exercises on Lessons 6-7





**1** **Match "A" with "B":** Student's Book

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. On Eid al-Fitr, we eat | ☐ a) family and friends. |
| 2. On Eid al-Fitr, we wear | ☐ b) a special meal. |
| 3. On Eid al-Fitr, we visit | ☐ c) presents. |
| 4. On Eid al-Fitr, we give | ☐ d) new clothes. |

**2** **Supply the missing letters:**


c _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _


d _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _


p _ _ _ _ _


p _ _ _ _ _ _ _


m _ _ _ _ _


m _ _ _


p _ _ _


c _ _ _ _ _ _ _


d _ _

## 3 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim. It's the start of spring, and it's my favorite time of year. My brother and I always decorate eggs for Sham El-Nessim. My mom cooks eggs until they are hard, then we use paint to dye them different colors. They look very pretty.

1. I love celebrating Sham El-Nessim. ( )
2. Sham El-Nessim is the start of summer. ( )
3. My mom always decorates eggs. ( )
4. My brother and I cook eggs until they are hard. ( )

## 4 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:




(presents - park - traditional music - clothes - musicians)

I like going to the ❶ .................................. for Eid. I always wear my new ❷ .................................. . They are colorful. We get ❸ .......................... from adults. We watch performers and listen to ❹ .................................. . They play ❺ .................................. . And there are always lots of good things to eat, too.

## 5 Choose the correct answer:




1. When is Sham El-Nessim?
   a) In summer. b) In spring.
2. What do children do?
   a) They decorate eggs. b) They decorate their rooms.
3. How do they decorate them?
   a) They put up balloons. b) They paint them different colors.
4. Where do people want to be on Sham El-Nessim?
   a) At home. b) Outside.
5. Where do people like to go in Alexandria during Sham El-Nessim?
   a) Montaza Palace gardens. b) The Library.



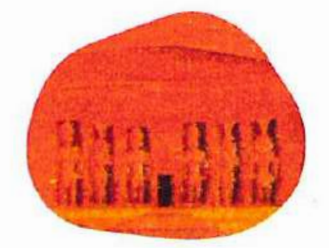
## Lessons 10-11 Geography





### Read and repeat

#### Places



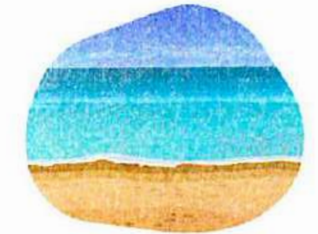
**Upper Egypt**
صعيد مصر



**Western Desert**
الصحراء الغربية



**Cairo**
القاهرة



**the northern coast**
الساحل الشمالي



**Aswan**
أسوان

**Nubian music**
موسيقى النوبة

**Sawahili music**
موسيقى السواحل

**popular music**
موسيقى شعبية

**classical music**
موسيقى كلاسيكية

**modern pop music**
موسيقى البوب الحديثة

**Cairo Conservatory of Music**
معهد القاهرة للموسيقى

**Bedouin music**
موسيقى بدوية

**Saidi folk music**
موسيقى شعبية صعيدية

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| many types | أنماط عديدة | come form | يأتي من |
| different parts | أجزاء مختلفة | grow | يزداد - ينمو |
| one place | مكان واحد | become | يصبح |
| their own traditions | تقاليدهم الخاصة | sea | بحر |
| around the world | حول العالم | river | نهر |
| favorite kind | نوع مفضل | city | مدينة كبيرة |

## Activity Book

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| the Mediterranean Sea | البحر الأبيض المتوسط | east | شرق |
| the Red Sea | البحر الأحمر | west | غرب |
| map | خريطة | north | شمال |
| hear | يسمع | south | جنوب |





## Read and learn

### Geography

There are many types of music in Egypt. Different parts of the country have their own traditions.

يوجد العديد من أنواع الموسيقى في مصر. أجزاء مختلفة من البلاد لها تقاليدها الخاصة.

**Cairo القاهرة**

Lots of people live in Cairo, so there are many traditions in one place. You can hear traditional folk music as well as **modern** pop music.

يعيش الكثير من الناس في القاهرة، لذلك يوجد العديد من التقاليد في المكان الواحد. يمكنك سماع الموسيقى الشعبية التقليدية وكذلك موسيقى البوب الحديثة.

The **Cairo Conservatory of Music** is a special school of music in Cairo. People can learn to play **classical** music on instruments such as the piano and the violin.

معهد القاهرة للموسيقى هو مدرسة خاصة للموسيقى في القاهرة. يمكن للناس تعلُّم عزف الموسيقى الكلاسيكية على آلات مثل البيانو والكمان.

**Northern Egypt شمال مصر**

Sawahili is popular music from the northern coast. It has a lot of string instruments.

السواحيلية هي موسيقى شعبية من الساحل الشمالي. لديها الكثير من الآلات الوترية.

**Upper Egypt صعيد مصر**

Musicians in Upper Egypt play folk music called Saidi. This is very popular in Egypt and in other countries.

يعزف الموسيقيون في صعيد مصر موسيقى شعبية تسمى الصعيدي. تحظى هذه الموسيقى بشعبية كبيرة في مصر وفي بلدان أخرى.



### Aswan أسوان



In the southern part of Aswan, there is traditional Nubian music. This is growing and becoming popular in other parts of Egypt and around the world.

في الجزء الجنوبي من أسوان، يوجد موسيقى نوبية تقليدية. تصبح هذه الموسيقى شائعة في أجزاء أخرى من مصر وحول العالم.

### Western Desert الصحراء الغربية

**Bedouin** music comes from the Western Desert. It uses wind instruments and singers.

تأتي الموسيقى البدوية من الصحراء الغربية. وتستخدم آلات النفخ والمغنيين.



## Exercises on Lessons 11-12

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Sawahili is popular music | a) the Western Desert. |
| 2. Musicians in Upper Egypt play | b) there is traditional Nubian music. |
| 3. In the southern part of Aswan, | c) folk music called Saidi. |
| 4. Bedouin music comes from | d) form the northern coast. |
| | e) live in Cairo. |

### 2 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

There are many types of music in Egypt. Different parts of the country have their own traditions. Cairo is the biggest city in Egypt. Lots of people live in Cairo, so there are many traditions in one place. You can hear traditional folk music as well as modern pop music.

1. There are many types of music in Egypt. ( )
2. Cairo is the biggest city in Egypt. ( )
3. Lots of people live in Cairo. ( )
4. In Cairo, you can hear modern pop music. ( )

## 3 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. folk music - Upper Egypt - Musicians - in - play. ........................ .
2. can - Where - you - Nubian music - hear? ........................ ?
3. instruments - string - a lot of - has - Sawahili music. ........................ .

## 4 Punctate the following sentences:

1. aswan is in the south of egypt ........................
2. there are many types of music in egypt ........................
3. lots of people live in cairo ........................
4. the red sea is in the east of egypt ........................

## 5 Choose the correct answer:

Activity Book

1. Where is Nubia?
   a) South of Delta. b) Upper Egypt.
2. Which sea is on the east coast?
   a) Mediterranean Sea. b) Red Sea.
3. Where is Cairo?
   a) Western Desert. b) Lower Egypt.
4. Which sea is on the north coast?
   a) Mediterranean Sea. b) Red Sea.
5. Where is the Nile Delta?
   a) North. b) South.
6. Where is Aswan?
   a) North. b) South.



Test 5

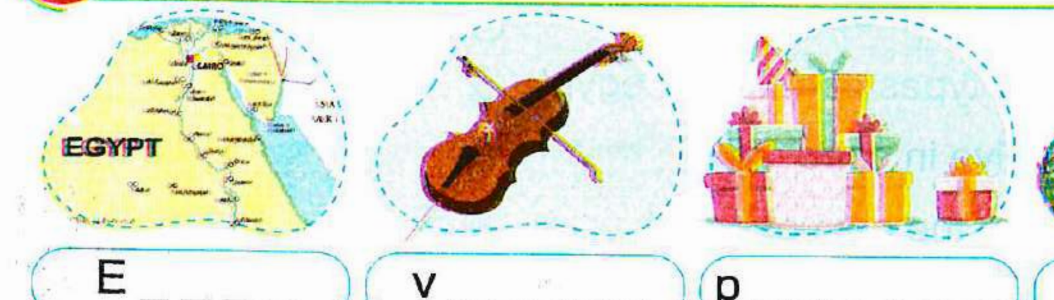
## Unit 11 Test 5




### 1 Match "A" with "B": (4Ms)

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. The tambourine is a | a) a lovely concert. |
| 2. The reed pipe is a | b) string instrument. |
| 3. I love the classical | c) percussion instrument. |
| 4. The oud is a | d) music best. |
| | e) wind instrument. |

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)




E _ _ _ _    v _ _ _ _ _ _    p _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _    s _ _ _ _ _ _

### 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. Let's (asks - asking - ask) our teacher to play the piano.
2. What (a - an - the) interesting story!
3. They're (eating - playing - wearing) costumes.
4. He wants his friend to (play - hit - kick) the flute.
5. They're telling a (folk music - folktale - folk dance).
6. The bagpipe is a (wind - percussion - string) instrument.
7. The (national - traditional - popular) anthem is a song that the people of a country sing.
8. (Where - Which - What) a colorful costume!

### 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

I love celebrating Eid al-Fitr with my family and friends. We decorate our home, so everything looks beautiful. We visit my aunt and uncle and my cousins. We often buy new clothes for Eid.

Everyone is very happy and friendly. There are lots of good things to eat at Eid al-Fitr. We also give presents. What an amazing day!

1. We decorate eggs on Eid el-Fitr. ( )
2. We wear new clothes on that special day. ( )
3. We celebrate Eid el-Fitr with family and friends. ( )
4. Everything looks beautiful on that day. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. instrument - favorite - is - What - your? ........................................?
2. play - We can - different ways - in - instruments. ........................................ .
3. do - celebrate - How - you - Sham El-Nessim? ........................................?

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1. They are ........................................ .
2. It's a ........................................ .
3. We go on a ........................................ trip.
4. He's a ........................................ .

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

What an exciting movie!

........................................................................................

Theme (4):
Communication

# Unit 12

# Say that again

# قل ذلك مرة أخرى



## Objectives

**Vocabulary**

**Communication:** cell phone, text message, password, phone call, picture message, postcard, telephone, video chat; loud, quiet, silent, high, low

**Adjectives for feelings:** excited, interested, tired, bored, curious, kind, worried, angry

**Language**

- People used to send letters.
- They didn't use to send text messages.

**Reading** **An instant message conversation**

**Phonics** **Silent letters**

**b:** thumb, lamb
**k:** knot, knit
**w:** write, wrist

**Life skills** **Problem solving:** solving a code

**Values** **Tolerance and acceptance of the other**

**Issues and challenges**

**Technological awareness:** the most appropriate way to communicate in different situations; safety online; passwords

**Integrated cross-curriculum topics**

**ICT:** online safety; braille
**Science:** how light travels, observing different sounds
**History:** communication in the past
**Social Studies:** braille

## Lessons 1-9 Say that again & Wider world




### Read and repeat

## Communication


**telephone**
تليفون - هاتف


**website**
موقع إلكتروني


**cell phone**
هاتف نقال - محمول



**newspaper**
صحيفة - جريدة



**password**
كلمة المرور


**magazine**
مجلة


**information**
معلومات


**story book**
كتاب قصص


**make a phone call**
يجري مكالمة تليفونية


**text message**
رسالة نصية


**picture message**
رسالة مصورة

## Unit 12

**email**
بريد إلكتروني



**on the internet**
عبر الإنترنت





**letter**
خطاب - جواب



**have a video chat**
يجري محادثة بالصوت والصورة (بالفيديو)



**postcard**
بطاقة بريدية

### Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| send | يبعث - يرسل | news | أخبار |
| receive | يستلم - يتلقى | paper | ورق |
| tell | يخبر | formal | رسمي |
| show | يُظهر - يبين - يعرض | words | كلمات |
| type | يكتب على الكمبيوتر | World Wide Web | شبكة الإنترنت العالمية |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| often | غالبًا | when | عندما |
| sometimes | أحيانًا | different | مختلف |
| never | أبدًا - مطلقًا | because | لأن |
| person | شخص | easy | سهل |
| quick | سريع | quickly | بسرعة |

## Prepositions & Expressions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| communicate with | يتواصل مع | in the past | في الماضي |
| Really? | حقًا؟ | So do I. | وكذلك أنا. |
| on vacation | في إجازة | the best way | أفضل طريقة |
| used to | اعتاد أن | chat with | يدردش مع |




### Regular Verbs أفعال منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| want | يريد - يرغب | wanted |
| need | يحتاج | needed |
| watch | يشاهد | watched |
| look at | ينظر إلى | looked at |
| talk to | يتحدث إلى | talked to |

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| use | يستخدم - يستعمل | used |
| receive | يستلم - يتلقى | received |
| type | يكتب على الكمبيوتر | typed |
| live | يعيش | lived |

### Irregular Verbs أفعال غير منتظمة

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| send | يبعث - يرسل | sent |
| buy | يشتري | bought |
| have to | يضطر إلى - يجب أن | had to |
| hear | يسمع | heard |
| say | يقول | said |
| find out | يكتشف | found out |

| Present | | Past |
|---|---|---|
| read | يقرأ | read |
| tell | يخبر | told |
| write | يكتب | wrote |
| see | يرى | saw |
| make | يُجري - يصنع - يعمل | made |



## Read and learn

**Grandma :** These are letters and postcards from my cousins when I was at school.

**Hany :** Why did you write letters?

**Grandma :** Well, we didn't see each other a lot because we lived in Luxor and they lived in Aswan. We wrote letters. People used to write letters a lot.

**Hana :** Really? I never write letters. We can make a phone call or send a text message.

**Hany :** I like sending picture messages.

**Grandma :** Yes, so do I now!

**الجدة:** هذه خطابات وبطاقات بريدية من أبناء عمومتي عندما كنت في المدرسة.

**هاني:** لماذا كتبت خطابات؟

**الجدة:** حسنًا، لم نر بعضنا البعض كثيرًا لأننا عشنا في الأقصر وهم عاشوا في أسوان. كتبنا خطابات. اعتاد الناس على كتابة خطابات كثيرًا.

**هنا:** حقًا؟ أنا لا أكتب خطابات أبدًا. نستطيع أن نجري مكالمة هاتفية .أو نرسل رسالة نصية.

**هاني:** أحب إرسال الرسائل المصورة.

**الجدة:** نعم، وأنا كذلك الآن.

## The best way to communicate

1



**We use a text message when:**
we want to send a quick, short message to one person.

نستخدم رسالة نصية عندما نريد إرسال رسالة سريعة وقصيرة إلى شخص واحد.

2



**We use a newspaper or magazine when:**
we want lots of people to buy things and read information on paper.
نستخدم صحيفة أو مجلة عندما نريد أن يشتري الكثير من الناس الأشياء ويقرأوا معلومات على الورق.

3



**We use a letter when:**
we want to tell one person our news. They don't have to receive it quickly.
نستخدم خطابًا عندما نريد أن نخبر شخص واحد بأخبارنا. ليس عليه استلامه بسرعة.

4



**We use a picture message when:**
we want to show a person a picture using our cell phone.
نستخدم رسالة مصورة عندما نريد أن نعرض صورة لشخص ما باستخدام هاتفنا النقال.

5



**We use a postcard when:**
we're on vacation and we want to tell a person about it.
نستخدم بطاقة بريدية عندما نكون في إجازة ونريد أن نخبر شخص عنها.

6



**We use a story book when:**
we want to tell someone a story about something.
نستخدم كتاب قصص عندما نريد أن نروي لشخص ما قصة عن شيء ما.

7



**We use an email when:**
we want to write to a person, and they need to see it quickly. It can be short or long.
نستخدم بريدًا إلكترونيًا عندما نريد أن نكتب إلى شخص ما، ويحتاج إلى رؤيته بسرعة. يمكن أن يكون قصيرًا أو طويلًا.



8

**We use a website when:**
we want lots of people all around the world to read what we are writing.
نستخدم موقع إلكتروني عندما نريد أن يقرأ الكثير من الناس في جميع أنحاء العالم ما نكتبه.



## Exercises on Lessons 1-9

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. Let's have a | a) cell phone. |
| 2. Do you send postcards? | b) a phone call. |
| 3. I want to make | c) No, I didn't. |
| 4. I have a | d) video chat. |
| | e) No, I don't. |

### 2 Match "A" with "B": Student's Book

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. You use a telephone or cell phone when you want to | a) type an email, write a project, watch a movie, or look at photos. |
| 2. You use a video chat when you want to | b) watch a program or a movie. |
| 3. You use a television when you want to | c) see the person you are talking to. |
| 4. You use the World Wide Web when you want to | d) talk to one person and hear what they are saying. |
| 5. You use a laptop when you want to | e) read websites or watch videos to find out information. |

## 3 Supply the missing letters:



p _ _ _ _ c _ _ _ t _ _ _ m _ _ _ _ _ _ v _ _ _ _ c _ _ _

p _ _ _ _ _ m _ _ _ _ _ t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ c _ _ _ p _ _ _ _

l _ _ _ _ _ p _ _ _ _ _ _ _ e _ _ _ _

m _ _ _ _ _ _ _ n _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ w _ _ _ _ _ _

## 4 Read and circle:

Student's Book

1. When you (make a phone call - have a video chat), you can see the other person.
2. You type words to send a (picture message - text message).
3. You need a (password - postcard) to use some websites.
4. It's quick and easy to make a (phone call - cell phone).

## 5 Read and circle T (true) or F (false):




When Grandma was at school, she lived in Luxor. Her cousins lived in Aswan, so she often wrote them letters and postcards. People used to write letters in the past. Hana doesn't write letter because she can make phone calls or send text messages. Hany likes sending picture messages.

1. Grandma lived in Aswan when she was at school. ( T / F )
2. People wrote letters in the past. ( T / F )
3. Hana writes letters and postcards to her cousins. ( T / F )
4. Hana makes phone calls, too. ( T / F )
5. Hany likes sending text messages. ( T / F )

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts:

1

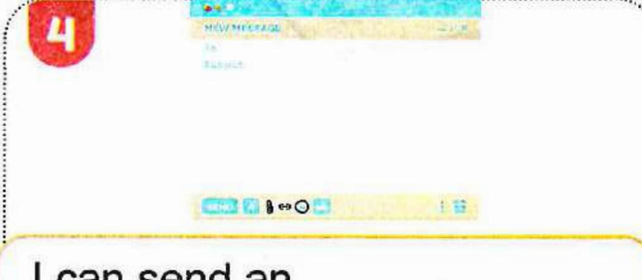

Let's have a .................................... .

2


It's a .................................... .

3


It's a .................................... .

4


I can send an .................................... .

## 7 Copy the following sentence:



Do you like having video chats?

.................................................................................

# Lessons 2-3 Reading & ICT





## Read and repeat



**online safety** الأمان على الإنترنت



**social media** وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي



**safe** آمن



**text a friend** يرسل رسالة نصية لصديق



**strong password** كلمة مرور قوية



**weak password** كلمة مرور ضعيفة



**message a friend** يرسل رسالة لصديق



**share information** يتشارك المعلومات

## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| the same password | نفس كلمة المرور | follow | يتبع |
| address | عنوان | change (n) | تغيير |
| important | هام - مهم | parents' advice | نصائح الوالدين |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| characters | عناصر | website | موقع إلكتروني |
| symbols | رموز | usually | عادة |
| numbers | أرقام | always | دائمًا |
| letters | حروف | Who | من |
| What | ما - ماذا | How | كيف |



## Prepositions & Expressions

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| know about | يعرف عن | learn about | يتعلم عن |
| get home | يصل للبيت | have to | يجب أن - لزامًا |
| have a good day | يستمتع بيوم جيد | date of birth | تاريخ الميلاد |
| go online | يتصل بالإنترنت | talk about | يتحدث عن |



## Read and learn





20:00

< Chats

Hi, Fares, how was school today?
أهلاً فارس، كيف كانت المدرسة اليوم؟

Hi, Mom. It was good, thanks.
مرحبًا أمي، كانت جيدة، شكرًا.

What did you do?
ماذا فعلت؟

We learned about **online safety**. Our teacher told us about **strong** passwords and **weak** passwords.
تعلمنا عن الأمان عبر الإنترنت. أخبرنا معلمنا عن كلمات المرور القوية وكلمات المرور الضعيفة.

That's interesting. Tell me all about it when you get home.
هذا شيق. أخبرني بكل شيء عندما تعود للبيت.

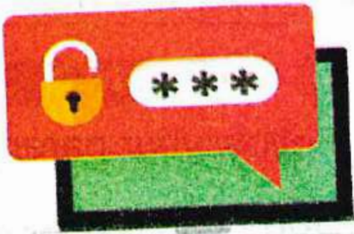
OK!
حسنًا!

## Online Safety



You are **online** when you visit **websites**, send emails, or use **social media.** It's important to know what is safe and what isn't safe when you go online.

أنت تكون متصلًا بالإنترنت عندما تزور مواقع إلكترونية، أو ترسل رسائل البريد الإلكتروني أو تستخدم وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي. من المهم معرفة ما هو آمن وما هو غير آمن عند الاتصال بالإنترنت.




### Passwords: كلمات السر (المرور)

✗ Don't use a password that people can guess, like your date of birth.

لا تستخدم كلمة مرور يمكن للأشخاص تخمينها، مثل تاريخ ميلادك.

✗ Don't use the same password on different websites.

لا تستخدم نفس كلمة المرور على مواقع إلكترونية مختلفة.

### Personal information: المعلومات الشخصية

✗ Don't share information online with people you don't know.

لا تشارك المعلومات عبر الإنترنت مع أشخاص لا تعرفهم.

✗ Don't send photos or tell people your address.

لا ترسل صورًا أو تخبر الأشخاص بعنوانك.

### What do you have to do? ماذا يجب عليك أن تفعل؟

✓ Ask your parents before you go online.

اسأل والديك قبل الاتصال بالإنترنت.

✓ Follow your parents' rules about going online.

اتبع قواعد والديك حول الاتصال بالإنترنت.

✓ Use a strong password. Have eight or more characters, with numbers, letters, and symbols.

استخدم كلمة مرور قوية، تحتوي على ثمانية أحرف أو أكثر، مع أرقام وأحرف ورموز.

**There's a lot to learn on the internet, and there's a lot of exciting information! Talk about what you learn with your family.**

يوجد الكثير لنتعلمه على الإنترنت، ويوجد الكثير من المعلومات المثيرة! تحدث عما تتعلمه مع عائلتك.



# Exercises on Lessons 2-3

## 1 Read and match:

**(A)**

1. Follow your parents' rules
2. Don't use a password
3. It is not a good idea to share
4. Don't use the same

**(B)**

- [ ] a) more characters.
- [ ] b) password on different websites.
- [ ] c) about going online.
- [ ] d) photos with people you don't know.
- [ ] e) that people can guess.

## 2 Choose the correct answer:

1. (Ask - Don't ask) your parents before you go online.
2. (Share - Don't share) information online with people you don't know.
3. (Use - Don't use) a strong password.
4. (Change - Don't change) your password on different websites.
5. (Send - Don't send) photos or tell people your address.

## 3 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

You are online when you visit websites, send emails, or use social media. There's a lot to learn on the internet, and there's a lot of exciting information! It's important to know what is safe and what isn't safe when you go online.

1. You aren't online when you visit websites. ( )
2. You are online when you use social media. ( )
3. There's a lot to learn on the internet. ( )
4. It's important to know what is safe when you go online. ( )

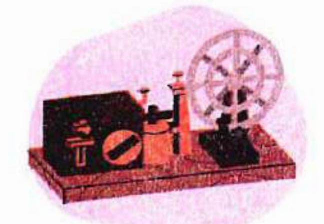
# Lessons 4-5 Language use & History



## Read and repeat



### Communication in the past



**telegraph**
تليجراف - آلة التلغراف



**television**
تليفزيون



**typewriter**
آلة كاتبة



**radio**
راديو - مذياع



**telephone**
تليفون

### Communication now




**World Wide Web**
شبكة الإنترنت العالمية



**laptop computer**
لابتوب - كمبيوتر محمول



**computer**
حاسب آلي



**cell phone**
هاتف نقال (خلوي)



## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **post** | يبعث - يرسل (بالبريد) | **timeline** | خط زمني |
| **code** | شفرة | **communicate** | يتواصل |
| **clicks** | نقرات | **50 years ago** | منذ 50 عامًا |
| **signals** | إشارات | **talk to each other** | يتحدثون إلى بعضهم |
| **along a wire** | بطول سلك | **too hard** | صعب جدًا جدًا |



## Read and learn



### Language use

1


People **used to** write letters.

اعتاد الناس على كتابة الخطابات.

2


They **didn't use to** send text messages.

لم يعتادوا على إرسال رسائل نصية.

3


50 years ago, people **used to** use telephones.

منذ 50 عامًا، اعتاد الناس على استخدام الهواتف.

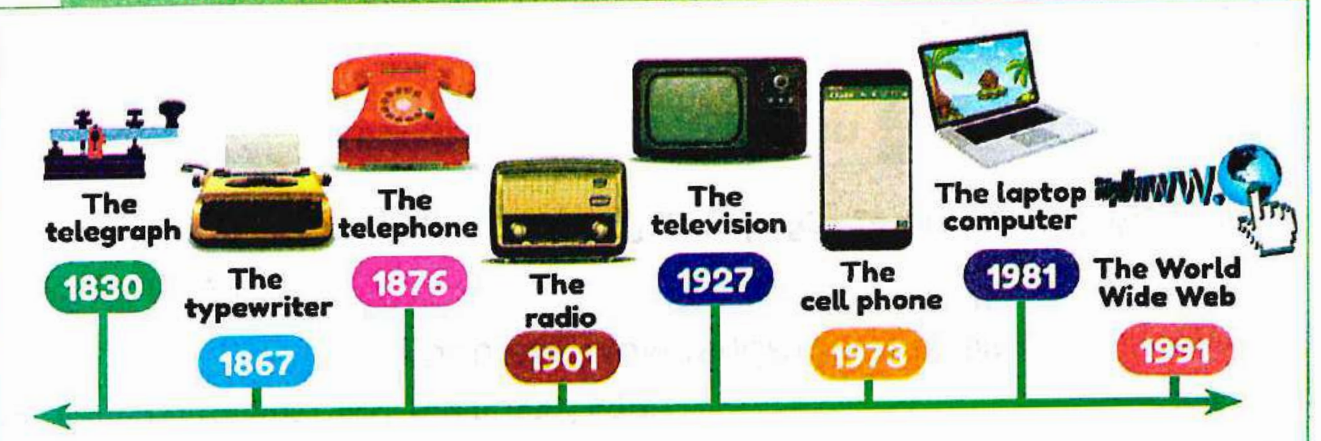
4


100 years ago, people didn't use to have video chats.

منذ 100 عام، لم يعتاد الناس على إجراء محادثات الفيديو.



## Communication in the past




People used to communicate in different ways in the past. They wrote letters, but it was slow to post them. The **telegraph** sent messages around the world **quickly**. It used a **code** of short and long **clicks** to send **signals** along a wire.

اعتاد الناس على التواصل بطرق مختلفة في الماضي. لقد كتبوا خطابات، لكنه كان إرسالها بطيئًا. أرسل التلغراف رسائل حول العالم بسرعة. استخدم شفرة من النقرات القصيرة والطويلة لإرسال إشارات على طول السلك.

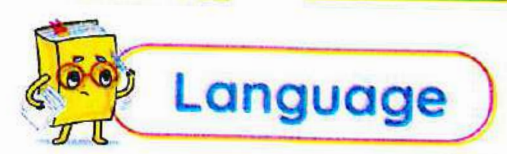
People talked to each other on the telephone. It was very exciting when it was new. Telephones used to need wires, but now we have cell phones. People used to use **typewriters** to write letters, newspapers and magazines. Today we use computers. They are very fast.

تحدث الناس مع بعضهم البعض عبر الهاتف. كان الأمر مثيرًا للغاية عندما كان جديدًا. كانت الهواتف تحتاج إلى أسلاك، لكن الآن لدينا هواتف محمولة. اعتاد الناس على استخدام الآلات الكاتبة لكتابة الخطابات والصحف والمجلات. اليوم نستخدم أجهزة الكمبيوتر. فهي سريعة جدًا.

Now we use the **World Wide Web** to find information on the internet. Everything is very different today!

الآن نستخدم شبكة الويب العالمية لنجد معلومات على الإنترنت. كل شيء مختلف جدًا اليوم!









- تُستخدم للتعبير عن عادة كانت تحدث في الماضي ولم تعد تحدث الآن، وتُتبع بالفعل بدون أي إضافات.

- We **used to** send telegraphs. Now, we don't.

اعتدنا أن نرسل التلغرافات. الآن، نحن لا نفعل ذلك.

- People **used to** use typewriters. Now, they use computers and laptops.

اعتاد الناس على استخدام الآلات الكاتبة. الآن، يستخدمون أجهزة الكمبيوتر و أجهزه الكمبيوتر المحمولة.

- ننفي (**used to**) بـ (**didn't use to**) ومعناها لم يكن معتادًا أن وتُتبع بالفعل بدون أي إضافات.

- My grandpa **didn't use to** have a cell phone.

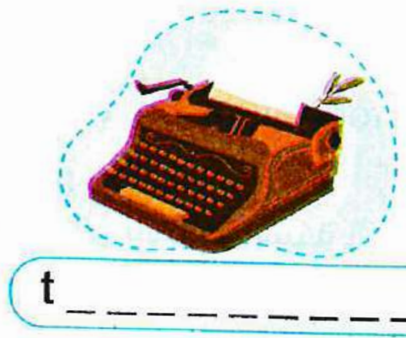
لم يعتاد جدي أن يمتلك هاتف خلوي.

- My grandma **didn't use to** send emails.

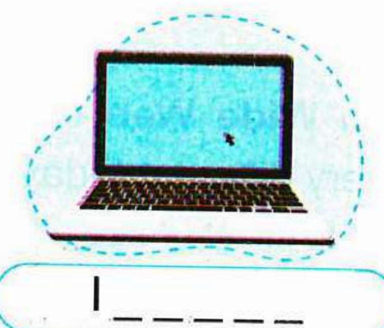
لم تعتاد جدتي أن ترسل رسائل البريد إلكتروني.



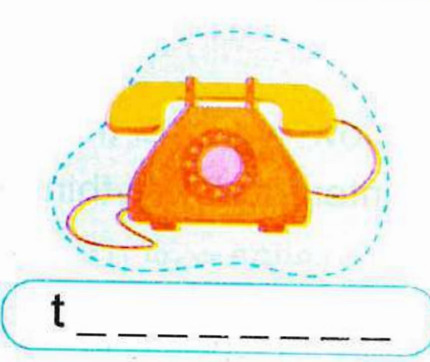

**1** Supply the missing letters:



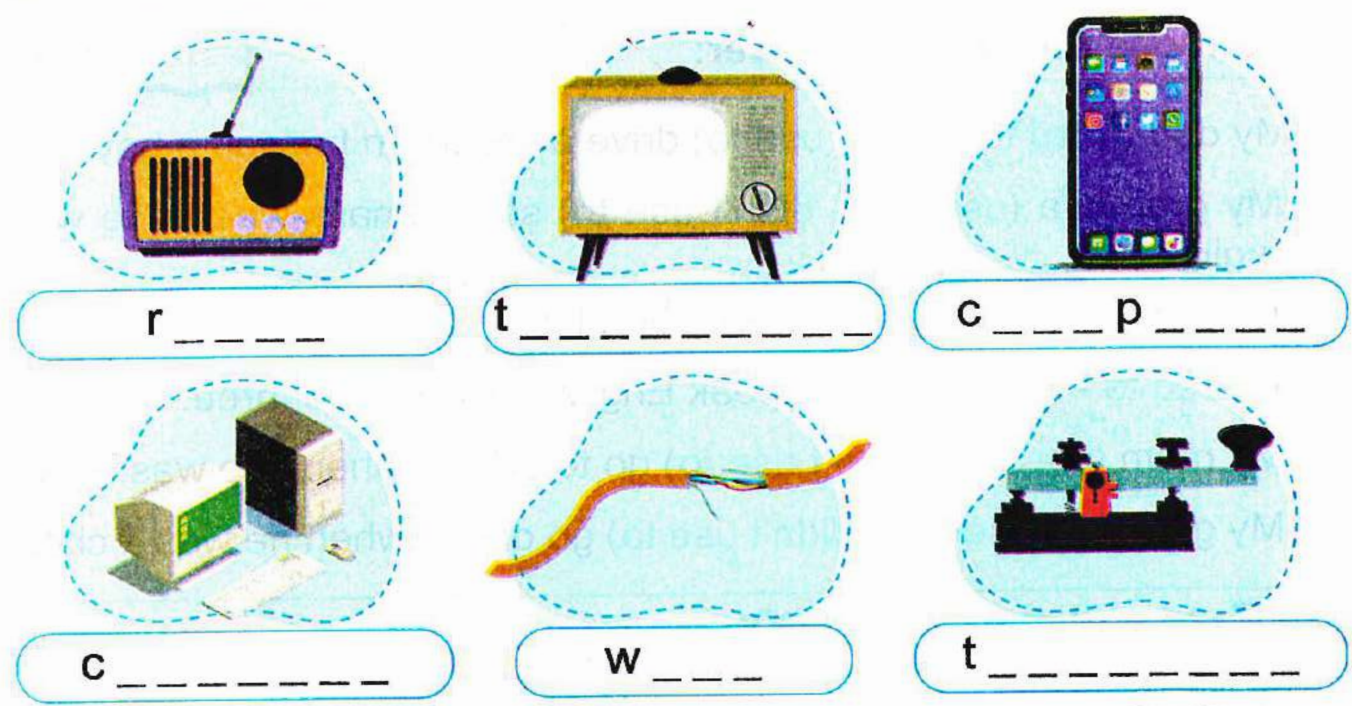
t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _



l _ _ _ _ _



t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _




## 2 Complete the sentences using the words from the box:




**(used to - didn't use to)**

1. My grandpa .................... send picture messages when he was a child.
2. I .................... draw pictures when I was five. It was too hard for me.
3. People .................... go online 100 years ago.
4. In the past, people .................... use cell phones.
5. People .................... write letters.
6. Fifty years ago, people .................... have video chats.

## 3 Choose the correct answer:

1. People (used to - use - used) to write letters in the past.
2. They (don't - didn't - aren't) use to send text messages.
3. 50 years ago, people used to (use - used to - used) telephones.
4. When I was five, I (am not use - don't use - didn't use) to ride a bike.
5. People didn't (used - used to - use) to send text messages.
6. She used to (do - does - didn't) her homework in the evening.



## 4 Choose the correct answer:



1. My dad (used to - didn't use to) drive a car when he was a boy.
2. My grandma (used to - didn't use to) send emails when she was a girl.
3. I (used to - didn't use to) walk when I was a baby.
4. I (used to - didn't use to) speak English when I was three.
5. My mom (used to - didn't use to) go to school when she was a girl.
6. My grandpa (used to - didn't use to) go online when he was a child.

## 5 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):

People used to communicate in different ways in the past. They wrote letters, but it was slow to post them. The telegraph sent messages around the world quickly. It used a code of short and long clicks to send signals along a wire.

1. It was quick to post letters. (   )
2. The telegraph sent messages slowly. (   )
3. The telegraph used a code of short and long clicks. (   )
4. The telegraph send signals along a wire. (   )

## 6 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. didn't use - People - text messages - to send. ✓ ..............................
2. didn't use - telephones - People - to use. ✓ ..............................
3. letters - People - to write - used. ✓ ..............................
4. didn't use - cell phones - to use - People. ✓ ..............................
5. postcards - used - People - to write. ✓ ..............................
6. video chats - to have - didn't use - People. ✓ ..............................

## Lessons 6-7

### Let's learn words & Learn Phonics with Busy Bee!



### Read and repeat



## Adjectives



**excited**
متحمس - فَرِح



**curious**
محب للاستطلاع - فضولي



**interested**
مهتم - شغوف



**kind**
طيب - عطوف



**tired**
مُتْعَب - مُجْهَد



**worried**
قَلِق - متوتر



**bored**
شاعر بالملل



**angry**
غاضب

### Activity Book

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **a lot of work** | الكثير من العمل | **history** | تاريخ |
| **help with** | يساعد في | **study** | يدرس - يذاكر |
| **project** | مشروع | **broke** | كَسَر |
| **space** | الفضاء | **lost** | فَقَد |
| **math test** | اختبار رياضيات | **hold** | يمسك |
| **school trip** | رحلة مدرسية | **tomorrow** | غدًا |
| **toy car** | سيارة لعبة | **plants** | نباتات |
| **two hours** | ساعتان | **the environment** | البيئة |



## Phonics: Silent letters:

PHONICS

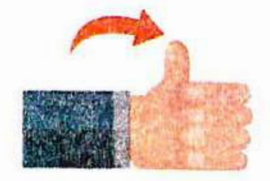


**A silent letter in a word is one that is written but not pronounced.**

الحرف الصامت في الكلمة هو الحرف الذي يُكتب ولا ينطق.

### Silent (b)





**thumb**
إصبع الإبهام



**lamb**
حَمَل (صغير الخروف)

### Silent (w)



**write**
يكتب

**wrist**
رسغ - معصم اليد

### Silent (k)



**knot**
عقدة - ربطة



**knit (past : knitted)**
يخيط - يحيك



## Read and learn

1



My grandma knitted a present for the lamb!

2



My sister writes with her thumb and her wrist is tired!

## Let's learn words

1



We did a lot of work on the project. I'm **tired**.

لقد قمنا بالكثير من العمل في المشروع. إنني مُجهَد.

2



My friend is very **kind**. He helped me with my work.

صديقي عطوف جدًا. لقد ساعدني في عملي.

3



My brother is **angry**. His laptop doesn't work.

أخي غاضب. جهاز الكمبيوتر المحمول الخاص به لا يعمل.

4



My little sister is very **curious** about space. She wants to learn lots of things!

أختي الصغيرة فضولية جدًا بشأن الفضاء. إنها تريد أن تتعلم الكثير من الأشياء!

5



I'm **worried** because my friend isn't very happy.

أنا قلق لأن صديقي ليس سعيدًا جدًا.





# Exercises on Lessons 6-7

## 1 Match "A" with "B":



| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. Belal helps his friends at school. | a) I'm worried about him. |
| 2. Dad lost his cell phone! | b) We're very excited. |
| 3. My friend isn't at school today. | c) Now, we're tired. |
| 4. I want to learn more about plants. | d) He's very kind. |
| 5. We have a school trip to Aswan. | e) I'm curious about the environment. |
| 6. We played football after school. | f) He's angry. |

## 2 Choose the correct answer:

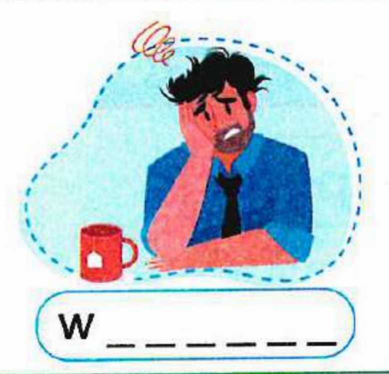


1. We did a lot of work on the project. I'm (tired - kind).
2. My friend is very (worried - kind). He helped me with my work.
3. My brother is (angry - interested). His laptop doesn't work.
4. My little sister is very (curious - excited) about space. She wants to learn lots of things!
5. I'm (excited - worried) because my friend isn't very happy.

## 3 Supply the missing letters:

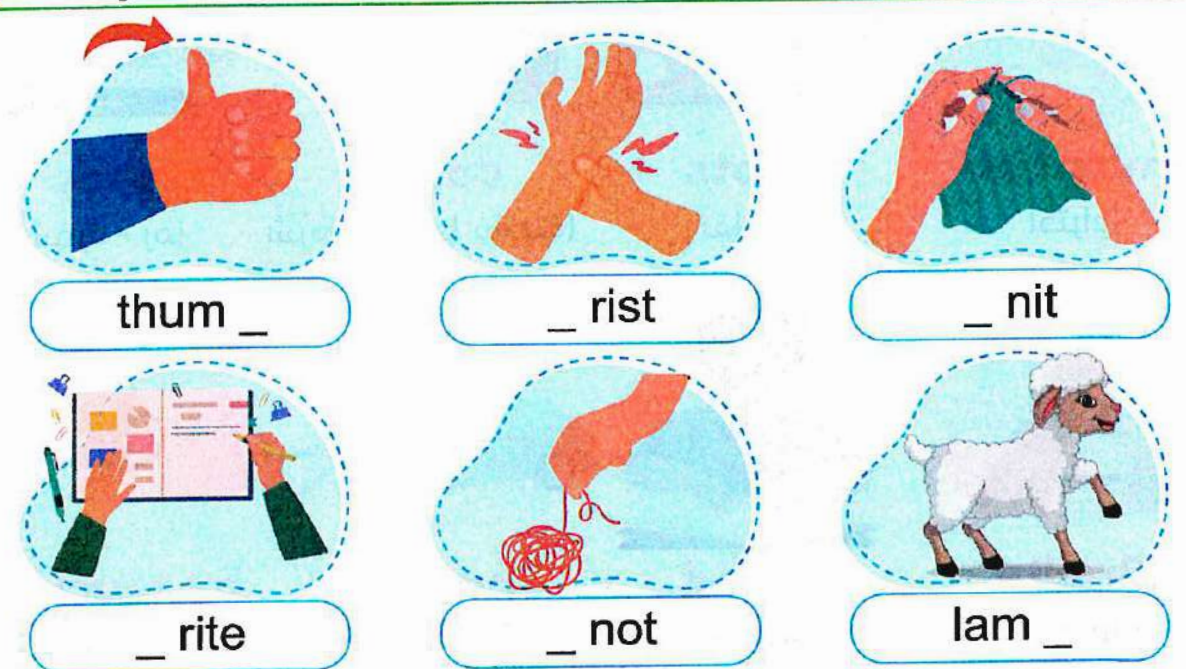


e _ _ _ _ _ _ _　　t _ _ _ _　　b _ _ _ _


k _ _ _ | w _ _ _ _ _ _ _ | a _ _ _ _

## 4 Complete the following words with (k), (w) or (b):



thum _ | _ rist | _ nit

_ rite | _ not | lam _

## 5 Read and complete the sentences with the words from the box:




(bored - angry - interested - kind - curious - excited - tired - worried)

1. My We love studying history. We're .................. in the past.
2. Dina asks a lot of questions. She's .................. about everything.
3. I'm .................. . Let's play a game!
4. My sister is .................. . She always helps me with my homework.
5. Milad is .................. because he broke his toy car.
6. Youssef doesn't like math. He is .................. about his math test.
7. Omar played in the park for two hours. Now, he's .................. .
8. I'm .................. because it's my birthday tomorrow!

## Lesson 8 Social Studies

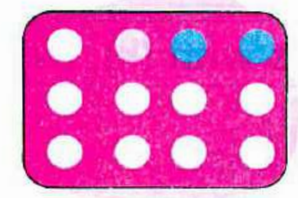


### Read and repeat

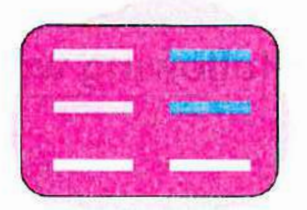




**invention**
اختراع



**dots**
نقاط



**dashes**
شُرَط (خطوط فاصلة)




**code**
شفرة - رمز



**Braille**
طريقة برايل للمكفوفين



**blind**
أعمى - مكفوف



**have an accident**
يتعرض لحادث



**by touching**
باللمس

### Extra Vocabulary

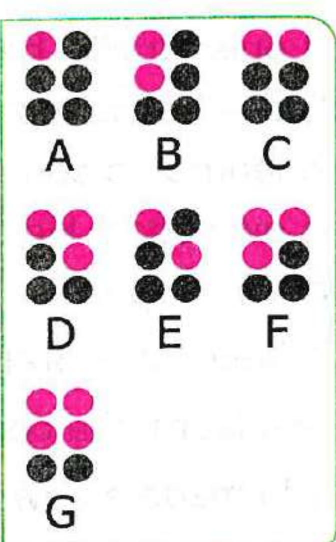
| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **young boy** | ولد صغير | **fingers** | أصابع اليد |
| **difficult** | صعب | **feel** | يشعر - يحس |
| **easier** | أسهل | **went** | ذهب |
| **different places** | أماكن مختلفة | **put** | يضع |
| **special school** | مدرسة خاصة | **call** | يُدعى - يُسمى |

## Braille



The **invention** of **Braille** is a story about a young boy called Louis Braille. He had an accident when he was a child. When he was five, he was blind — he couldn't see.

اختراع طريقة برايل (للقراءة) هي قصة عن صبي صغير يدعى لويس برايل. تعرض لحادث عندما كان طفلاً. عندما كان في الخامسة من عمره، كان كفيف — لم يستطع الرؤية.




Louis went to a special school in Paris for blind children. He learned a **code** for reading by touching **dots** and **dashes** with his fingers. It was difficult, but he wanted to learn to read. When he was fifteen, he made his own code. It was easier to read. He used six dots and put them in different places. You can feel the special dots on the paper.

ذهب لويس إلى مدرسة خاصة في باريس للأطفال المكفوفين. تعلم شفرة للقراءة عن طريق لمس النقاط والشرطات بأصابعه. كان الأمر صعبًا، لكنه أراد أن يتعلّم القراءة. عندما كان في الخامسة عشرة من عمره، صنع شفرته الخاصة. كانت الأسهل في القراءة استخدم ستة نقاط ووضعها في أماكن مختلفة. تستطيع أن تشعر بالنقاط الخاصة على الورق.

More people learned Braille, and today it helps blind people read, do math and play music all around the world.

تعلم الكثير من الناس طريقة برايل، واليوم تساعد المكفوفين على القراءة والرياضيات وتشغيل الموسيقى في جميع أنحاء العالم.

## Exercises on Lesson 8

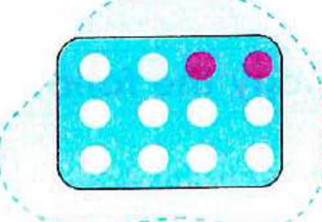
### 1 Supply the missing letters:



b _ _ _ _

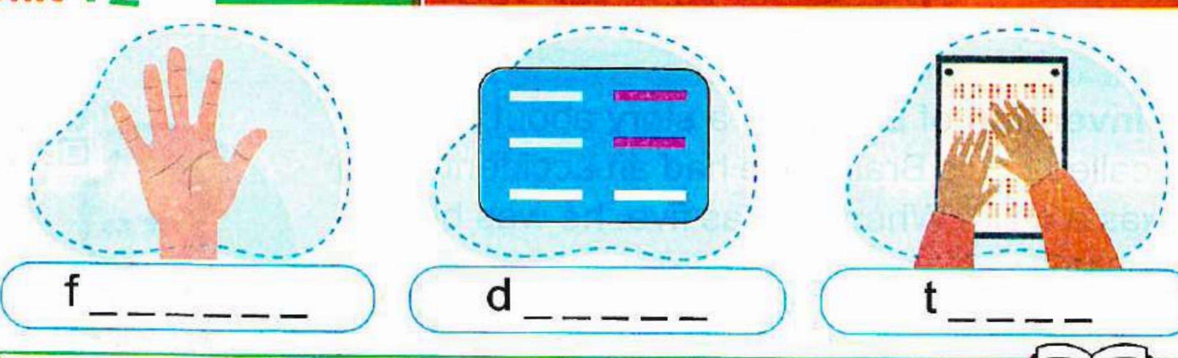


a _ _ _ _ _ _ _



d _ _ _





f_______ d______ t____

## 2 Read and circle "Yes" or "No":




Louis Braille had an accident when he was a child. He was blind – he couldn't see. Louis went to a school for blind children. He learned a code for reading. The code was difficult, so he made his own code. He used six dots to make his code. You can feel the dots on paper.

1. When Louis Braille was a child, he couldn't see. Yes / No
2. He learned a code for writing. Yes / No
3. He made a new code for reading. Yes / No
4. He used eight letters on paper. Yes / No
5. You write the dots with a pen. Yes / No

## 3 Punctate the following sentences:

1. it's a story about a young boy called louis braille
   ✓ ..........
2. where did he learn
   ✓ ..........
3. louis went to a special school in paris
   ✓ ..........

## 4 Copy the following sentence:



His invention is very important.

..........

## Lessons 10-11

## Science: How light travels - Observing sound



### Read and repeat





**light**
ضوء



**travel**
يسافر - ينتقل



**straight lines**
خطوط مستقيمة



**hole**
فتحة - حفرة



**flashlight**
كشاف - مصباح يدوي



**reflect**
يعكس



**block**
يسد - يحجز



**mirror**
مرآة

**allow**
يسمح

**opaque objects**
أشياء غير شفافة -
أجسام معتمة

**transparent objects**
أشياء شفافة -
أجسام شفافة

**shiny objects**
أشياء لامعة

**smooth objects**
أشياء ملساء - ناعمة



# Sounds



**loud**
صوتٌ عال



**quiet**
هادئ



**silent**
صامت




**noise**
صوت - ضوضاء



**low**
منخفض



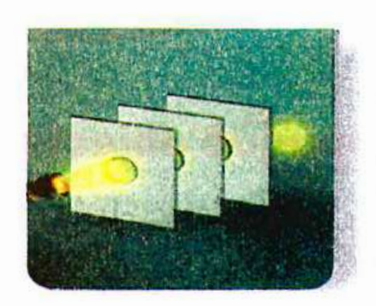
**high**
عالٍ

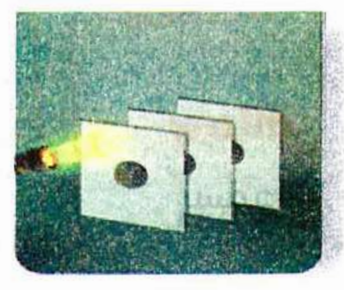


## Read and learn



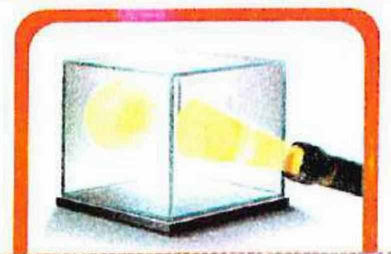
### How light travels





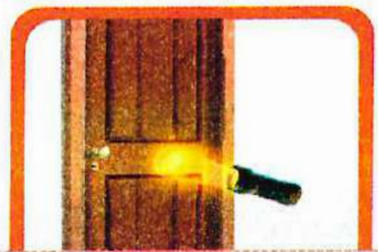
Light travels in straight lines. Look at this picture. There are holes in pieces of card. When the holes are in a straight line, you see the light from the flashlight on the wall. You can move the card so the holes aren't in a straight line. The card blocks the light.

ينتقل الضوء في خطوط مستقيمة. انظر إلى هذه الصورة. يوجد ثقوب في قطع الكروت. عندما تكون الثقوب في خط مستقيم، ترى الضوء من المصباح على الحائط. يمكنك تحريك الكروت حتى لا تكون الثقوب في خط مستقيم. تحجب الكروت الضوء.



**Transparent** objects allow light to pass through.

الأجسام الشفافة تسمح بمرور الضوء.



**Opaque** objects block light. Light cannot pass through them.

الأجسام المعتمة تحجب الضوء. لا يمكن للضوء أن يمر من خلالها.



**Smooth,** shiny objects **reflect** light. When you look at them, you can see your face!

تعكس الأشياء الملساء واللامعة الضوء. عندما تنظر إليهم، يمكنك رؤية وجهك!



## Exercises on Lessons 10-11

### 1 Match "A" with "B":

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. Opaque objects | ☐ a) in straight lines. |
| 2. Light travels | ☐ b) transparent objects. |
| 3. Smooth, shiny objects | ☐ c) about going online. |
| 4. Light passes through | ☐ d) block light. |
| | ☐ e) reflect light. |



### 2 Look at the pictures and write (block, pass or reflect):

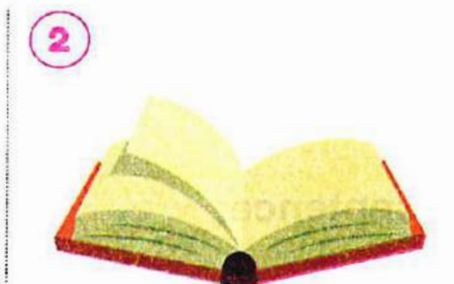



1



..............................

2



..............................

3



..............................




..............................




..............................




..............................

## 3 Choose “a” or “b”:







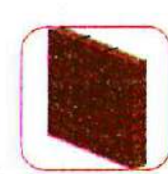
1. a) A door blocks light.
   b) Light passes through a door.



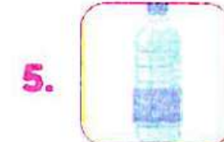
2. a) A metal spoon blocks light.
   b) A metal spoon reflects light.



3. a) A window reflects light.
   b) Light passes through a window.



4. a) A wall blocks light.
   b) Light passes through a wall.



5. a) Light passes through a water bottle.
   b) A water bottle reflects light.



6. a) A mirror reflects light.
   b) A mirror blocks light.

## 4 Copy the following sentence:





..............................................................................



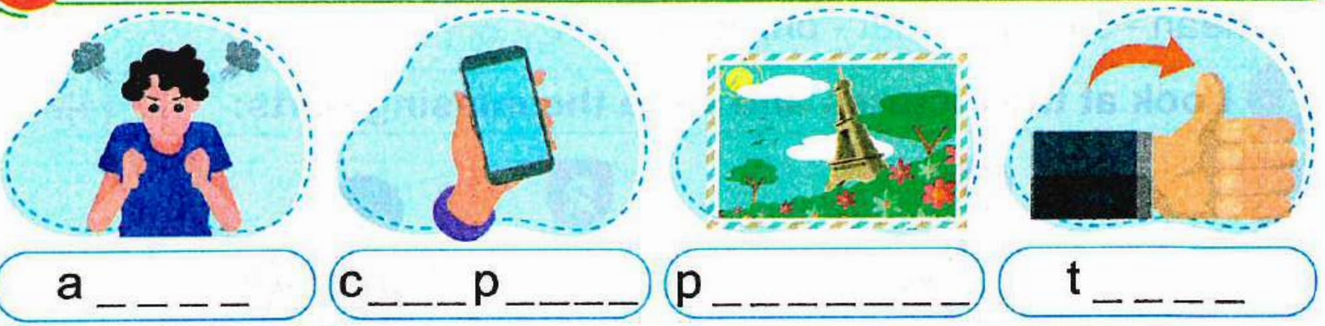
## Unit 12 Test 6




### 1 Match "A" with "B": (4Ms)

| (A) | (B) |
| --- | --- |
| 1. You are online when | a) He's very kind. |
| 2. Let's have a | b) that people can guess. |
| 3. He helps all people. | c) you visit websites. |
| 4. Don't use a password | d) feel dots and dashes. |
| | e) video chat. |

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)



a _ _ _ _   c_ _ _p_ _ _ _   p_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _   t_ _ _ _

### 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. She used to (writes - wrote - write) letters.
2. He's (bored - blind - blond). He can't see.
3. He (don't - didn't - isn't) use to play tennis.
4. It's a (loud - silent - low) noise. It's not quiet.
5. People used to use (telephones - radios - typewriters) to write letters.
6. She (used - uses - use) to go to El Nasr School.
7. I didn't (uses - use - used) to send emails.
8. We make lots of (video chats - letters - phone calls) every day.

### 4 Read and mark (✔) or (✘): (4Ms)

In the past, life was different. People were poor and life was difficult, but they were happy. There wasn't a cell phone. There weren't computers, laptops or the internet.



But there was healthy food to eat. Life was healthy, calm and quiet. They had time to play. They had time to rest. They had time to sit and speak with one another. I think life in the past was happier than life today.

1. Life was easy in the past. ( )
2. There were cell phones in the past. ( )
3. People were happy in the past. ( )
4. Life was quiet in the past. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences: (3Ms)

1. you - Do - on a television - movies - watch? ............................?
2. went to - blind children - Louis - for - a school. ............................ .
3. mean - safety - What - online - does? ............................?

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)



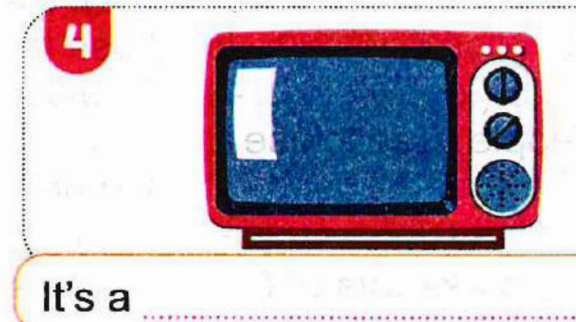
1. It's a ............................ letter.



2. He's ............................ .



3. They used to write ............................ .



4. It's a ............................ .

## 8 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)



Good luck. See you next year.




# Readers

## Non-Fiction Reader

# Cities in Egypt

# مدن في مصر

## Main Vocabulary

| English | Arabic | English | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|
| the River Nile Delta | دلتا نهر النيل | monuments | آثار |
| northwest | شمال غرب | Qaitbay Fort | قلعة قايتباى |
| the Library of Alexandria | مكتبة الإسكندرية | the Lighthouse of Alexandria | منارة الإسكندرية |
| citadel | قلعة | digital materials | مواد رقمية |

## Extra Vocabulary

| English | Arabic | English | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|
| fact file | ملف الحقائق | population | عدد السكان |
| location | موقع - مكان | the weather | الطقس |
| the Mediterranean Sea | البحر الأبيض المتوسط | Lower Egypt | مصر السفلى (الوجه البحري) |
| port | ميناء | temperature | درجة الحرارة |
| long ago | منذ وقت طويل | today | اليوم |
| rain | مطر | thunder | الرعد |
| lightning | البرق | amazing | مدهش - مذهل |
| made of | مصنوع من | stone | حجر - صخر |
| learning | التعلُّم | next to the sea | بجوار البحر |
| Upper Egypt | صعيد مصر | temples | معابد |
| winter | فصل الشتاء | summer | فصل الصيف |

## Cities in Egypt



| English | Arabic | English | Arabic |
|---|---|---|---|
| Cairo | القاهرة | Alexandria | الإسكندرية |
| Luxor | الأقصر | Assiut | أسيوط |



## Adjectives

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| highest | أعلى | lowest | أقل |
| historical | تاريخي | modern | حديث |
| important | هام - مهم | different | مختلف |
| cool | بارد قليلاً | warm | دافئ |
| windy | عاصف | famous | مشهور |

## Vocabulary Study





**A northwest** : is north and west.
الشمال الغربي هو الشمال والغرب.

**A lighthouse** : is a building with a source of light.
المنارة هي مبنى به مصدر للضوء.

**Digital materials** : are materials online or on the computer.
المواد الرقمية هي مواد عبر الإنترنت أو على الكمبيوتر.

## Cities in Egypt
## مدن في مصر



**Fact file** : Alexandria
**Population** : More than 5 million
**Location** : On the Mediterranean Sea, Lower Egypt, near the River Nile delta

**What is the weather like?**
Highest temperature = in August, about 31°C
Lowest temperature = in January, about 18 °C

**What is it famous for?**
Historical and modern monuments, an important port

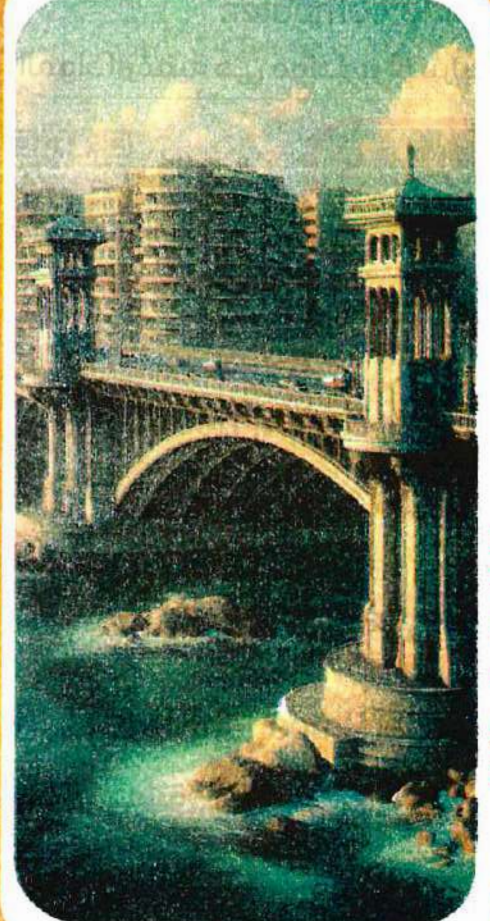
**ملف حقائق** : الإسكندرية
**عدد السكان** : أكثر من 5 ملايين نسمة
**الموقع** : على البحر الأبيض المتوسط، مصر السفلى، بالقرب من دلتا نهر النيل
**ما هي حالة الطقس؟** : أعلى درجة حرارة = في أغسطس، حوالي 31 درجة مئوية
: أدنى درجة حرارة = في يناير، حوالي 18 درجة مئوية
**بماذا تشتهر؟** : المعالم التاريخية والحديثة، ميناء مهم

1



Alexandria is the second-biggest city in Egypt. More than 5 million people live there. It's on the Mediterranean Sea, 183 km **northwest** of Cairo in Lower Egypt. It's near the River Nile delta. It was a very important port long ago, and it is today, too.

الإسكندرية هي ثاني أكبر مدينة في مصر. أكثر من 5 ملايين نسمة يعيشون هناك. إنها على البحر الأبيض المتوسط، على بعد 183 كم شمال غرب القاهرة في مصر السفلى. إنها تقع بالقرب من دلتا نهر النيل. لقد كانت ميناءً مهمًا للغاية منذ فترة طويلة، ومازالت هامة اليوم أيضًا.





2

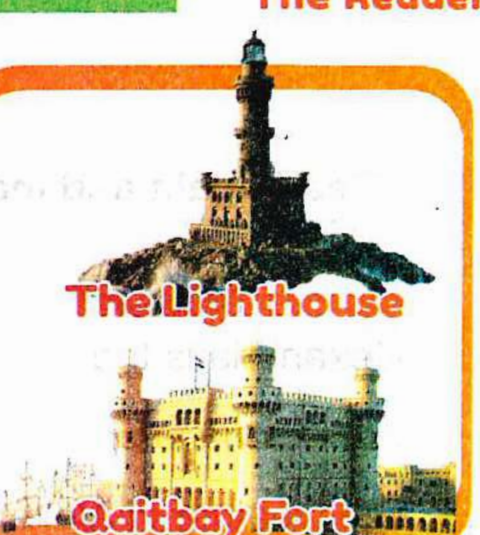
The weather in Alexandria can be different to other parts of Egypt. It's very warm in summer, at about 31°C. It can be cool in winter, at about 18°C. It's next to the sea and it can be windy. There is sometimes rain, thunder and lightning in winter. It's famous for its amazing history. Lots of people visit Alexandria to see the **monuments**.

يمكن أن يكون الطقس في الإسكندرية مختلفًا عن أجزاء أخرى من مصر. يكون الجو دافئًا جدًا في الصيف، عند حوالي 31 درجة مئوية. يمكن أن يكون الجو باردًا في الشتاء، عند حوالي 18 درجة مئوية. إنها بجوار البحر ويمكن أن يكون الجو عاصفًا. يوجد هناك في بعض الأحيان مطر ورعد وبرق في فصل الشتاء. تشتهر الإسكندرية بتاريخها المذهل. الكثير من الناس يزورون الإسكندرية لمشاهدة الآثار.

3

Qaitbay Fort is a **citadel** next to the sea. It is made of stone. The stones were from a famous **lighthouse**, the Lighthouse of Alexandria.

قلعة قايتباي هي قلعة بجوار البحر. وهي مصنوعة من الحجر. تكونت هذه الحجارة من منارة شهيرة، وهي منارة الإسكندرية.







4

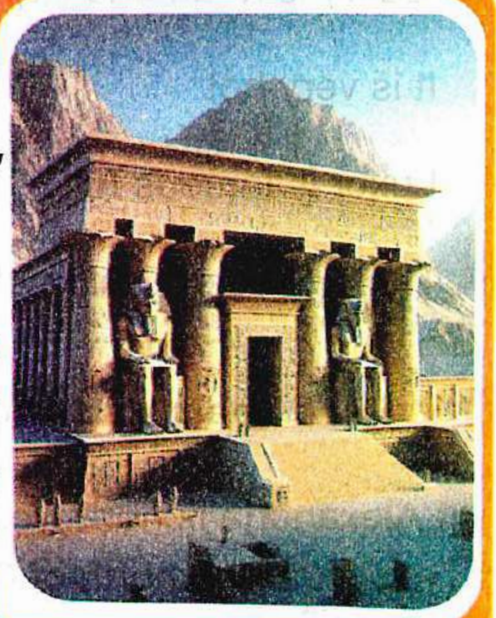
In the Library of Alexandria long ago, there were important books from all around the world. Now there is the New Library of Alexandria. It's a center for learning with books and **digital materials**.

في مكتبة الإسكندرية منذ فترة طويلة، كانت هناك كتب مهمة من جميع أنحاء العالم. الآن هناك مكتبة الإسكندرية الجديدة. إنها مركز للتعلم بالكتب والمواد الرقمية.

5

Luxor is a famous city in Upper Egypt. About 500,000 people live there. It is very hot in July, at 41°C. It's warm in January, too – it can be 23°C. Luxor is famous for its old monuments and temples.

الأقصر هي مدينة مشهورة في صعيد مصر. يعيش هناك حوالي 500,000 نسمة. يكون الجو حارًا جدًا في يوليو، عند 41 درجة مئوية. يكون الجو دافئًا في يناير، أيضًا – يمكن أن تصل درجة الحرارة إلى 23 درجة مئوية. تشتهر الأقصر بآثارها ومعابدها القديمة.



## Questions with their model answers

### 1 Read again and match:

| (A) | (B) |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Alexandria is the | a) has books and digital materials. |
| 2. Alexandria is on | b) a citadel next to the sea. |
| 3. The weather in Alexandria is | c) second-biggest city in Egypt. |
| 4. Qaitbay Fort is | d) the Mediterranean Sea. |
| 5. The New Library of Alexandria | e) warm in summer. |

### 2 Read again and match:

| (A) | (B) |
| --- | --- |
| 1. Qaitbay Fort is | a) its old monuments and temples. |
| 2. Luxor is a famous city | b) were from the Lighthouse of Alexandria. |
| 3. It is very hot | c) in July in Luxor. |
| 4. Luxor is famous for | d) in Upper Egypt. |
| 5. The stones of Qaitbay Fort | e) made of stone. |

### 3 Read again and choose:

1. Alexandria is northwest of Cairo. It is ................ .
   a) near the north of Cairo
   b) north and west of Cairo



2. The lighthouse is .......................... .
   a) a building with a source of light
   b) a device that needs light

3. Digital materials are .......................... .
   a) materials in books
   b) materials online or on the computer

## 4 Complete the following sentences:

1. Alexandria is the .......................... biggest city in Egypt.
2. Alexandria is on the .......................... .
3. Alexandria is on the Mediterranean Sea, 183 km .......................... of Cairo in Lower Egypt.
4. Alexandria is famous for its amazing .......................... .
5. Alexandria was a very important .......................... long ago.
6. It's .......................... in summer in Alexandria.
7. The weather is cool in .......................... in Alexandria.
8. There is sometimes rain, .......................... and lightning in winter in Alexandria.
9. Lots of people visit Alexandria to see the .......................... .
10. Qaitbay Fort is a citadel next to the .......................... .
11. Qiatbay Fort is made of .......................... .
12. The stones were from a famous .......................... .
13. In the Library of Alexandria long ago, there were important .......................... from all around the world.
14. The New Library of Alexandria is a center of books and .......................... .
15. Luxor is a famous city in .......................... Egypt.
16. Luxor is famous for its old monuments and .......................... .



## 5 Read again and answer the questions:

1. Is Alexandria the biggest city in Egypt? ➤ ................................ .
2. Is there thunder and lightning in the summer? ➤ ................................ .
3. Do people visit Alexandria to see the monuments? ➤ ................................ .
4. Is Qaitbay Fort next to the sea? ➤ ................................ .
5. What can you do at the Library of Alexandria? ➤ ................................ .

# Answers

## 1 Read again and match:

| 1. c) | 2. d) | 3. e) | 4. b) | 5. a) |
|---|---|---|---|---|

## 2 Read again and match:

| 1. e) | 2. d) | 3. c) | 4. a) | 5. b) |
|---|---|---|---|---|

## 3 Read again and choose:

| 1. b) | 2. a) | 3. b) |
|---|---|---|

## 4 Complete the following sentences:

| 1. second | 2. Mediterranean Sea | 3. northwest | 4. history |
|---|---|---|---|
| 5. port | 6. warm | 7. winter | 8. thunder |
| 9. monuments | 10. sea | 11. stone | 12. lighthouse |
| 13. books | 14. digital materials | 15. Upper | 16. temples |

## 5 Read again and answer the questions:

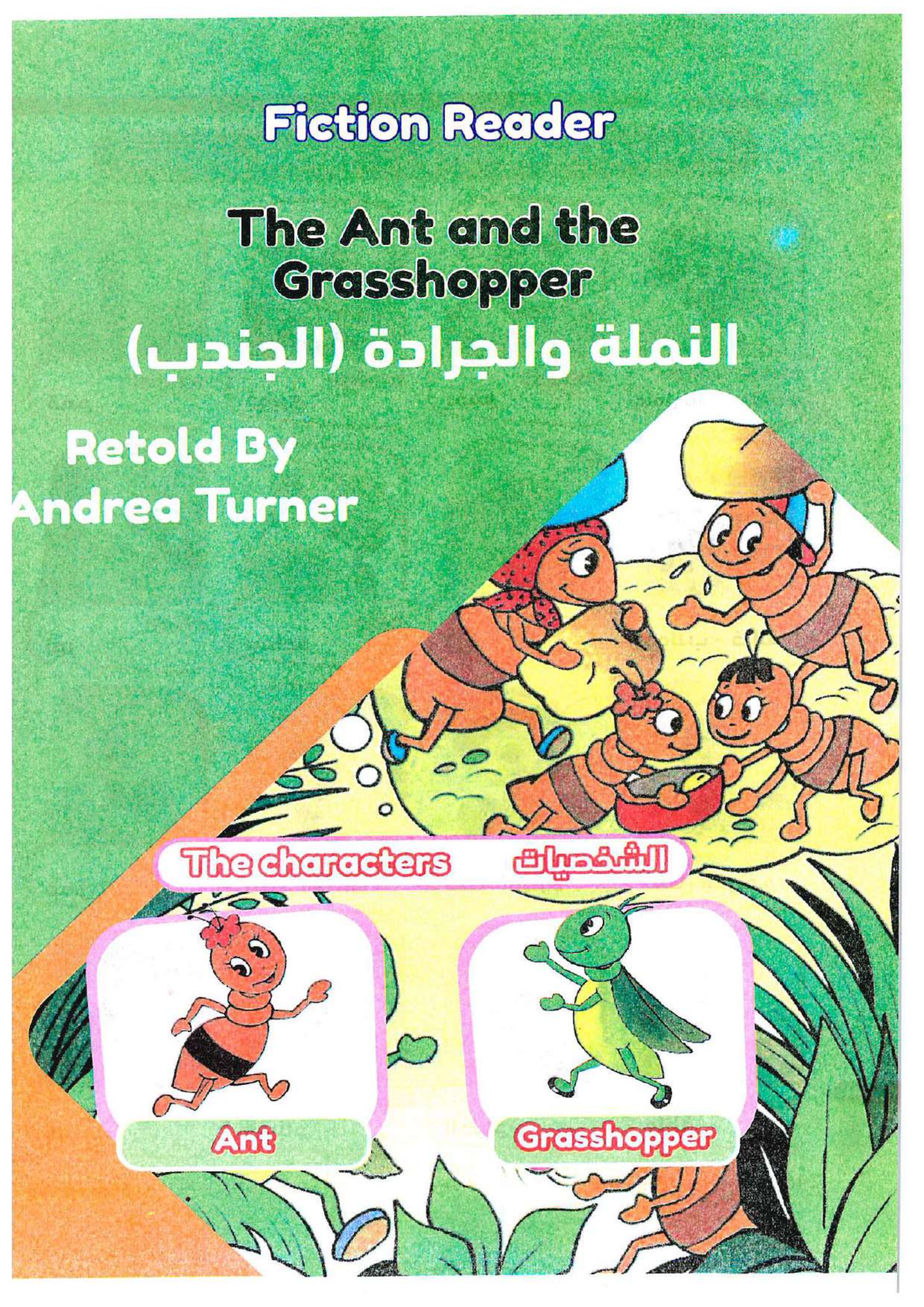
1. No. It's the second-biggest city.
2. No. There is thunder and lightning in winter.
3. Yes, they do.
4. Yes, it is.
5. I can learn using books and digital materials.

Fiction Reader

# The Ant and the Grasshopper

# النملة والجرادة (الجندب)

Retold By
Andrea Turner



## Picture Dictionary القاموس المصور


construction worker عامل بناء


collect يجمع


bridge كوبري


wheat قمح


cupboard دولاب - خزانة


corn ذرة


help يساعد


river نهر


fall فصل الخريف


winter فصل الشتاء


summer فصل الصيف


spring فصل الربيع


family عائلة


morning الصباح


afternoon الصباح


evening المساء





farm مزرعة



sleep ينام



food طعام



## Extra Vocabulary

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| walk home | يمشي للبيت | work hard | يعمل بجد |
| play together | يلعبون معًا | need | يحتاج |
| laugh | يضحك | stay | يبقى |
| all day | طوال اليوم | tell | يخبر |
| cousins | أولاد العم | farmers | مزارعون |
| children | أطفال | grandparents | أجداد |
| carefully | بعناية - بحرص | put | يضع |
| hungry | جائع | market | سوق |
| seller | بائع | solid | صلب |
| ice | جليد | fields | حقول |
| empty | فارغة | relax | يسترخي - يستريح |
| house | منزل | cold | يشعر بالبرد |
| have | لديه - عنده | share | يتشارك |

# The Ant and the Grasshopper
## النملة والجراد (الجندب)

**1**

This is the ant ❶. She lives with her family ❷ next to a river ❸. She always helps her family.

❶ نملة ❷ عائلتها ❸ نهر



**2**

This is the grasshopper ❶. He is the ant's friend ❷. He never helps ❸. He always plays.

❶ جراد (جندب) ❷ صديق ❸ يساعد




**3**

It's summer ❶. It's hot. In the afternoon, the ant helps her family on the farm ❷. They collect ❸ lots of wheat ❹ and corn ❺.

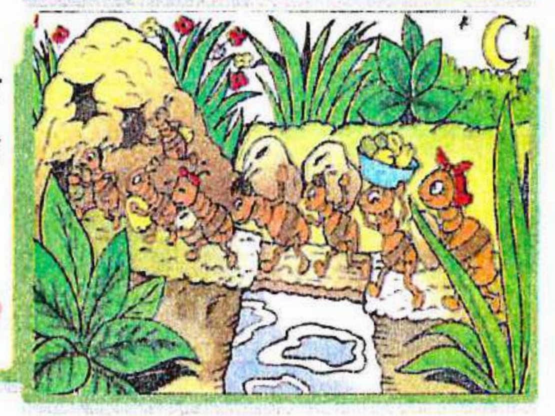
❶ فصل الصيف ❷ مزرعة ❸ يجمعوا ❹ القمح ❺ الذرة



**4**

In the evening, they walk home ❶ over the bridge ❷. They work very hard every day.

❶ يمشون للبيت ❷ الكوبري



**5**

Every morning the ant and the grasshopper play together ❶. They are good friends. Every afternoon the ant helps her family and the grasshopper sleeps ❷. He never works.

❶ يلعبون معا ❷ ينام




**6**

The ant wants to play, but she needs to help her family. The grasshopper laughs ❶ at the ant. He wants his friend to stay ❷ and play all day.

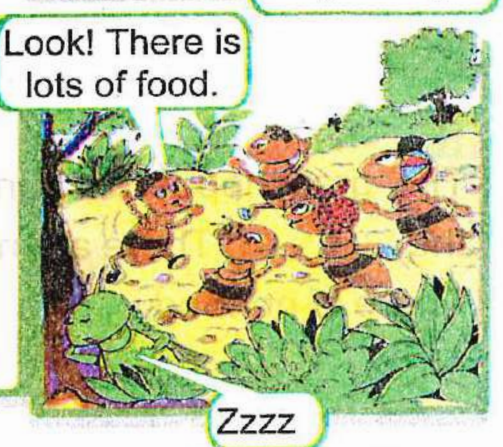
❶ يضحك ❷ تبقى




**7**

The ant tells ❶ the grasshopper that her family need to collect food ❷ for winter ❸. In winter, there isn't any food.
The ant goes to help her family. The grasshopper sleeps.

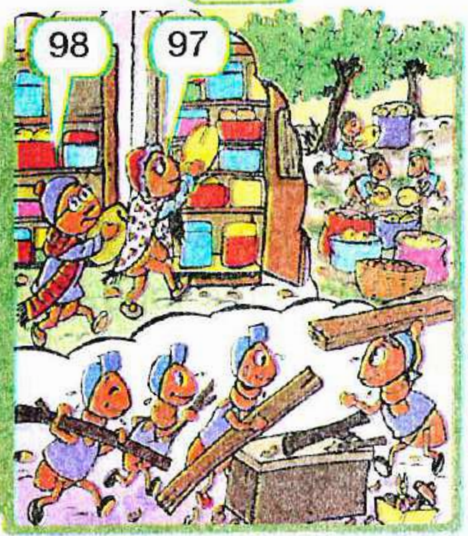
❶ تخبر ❷ طعام ❸ فصل الشتاء




**8**

The ant family all work together. The cousins are like construction workers ❶.
They build cupboards ❷.
The children are farmers ❸ and collect the food.
The grandparents ❹ carefully ❺ put all the food in the cupboards.

❶ عمال بناء ❷ دواليب - خزانات ❸ مزارعون
❹ أجداد ❺ بعناية - بحرص








**9**

It's fall ①. The grasshopper doesn't have any food. The grasshopper is hungry ②. The grasshopper goes to the market seller ③ for food. The market seller has lots of food.

① فصل الخريف ② جائع ③ بائع في السوق



**10**

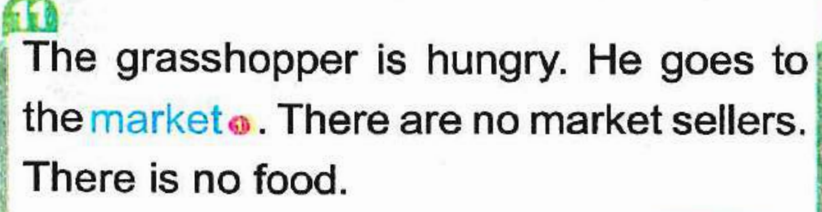
It is colder ①. Winter ② is here. The river turns to ③ solid ice ④. The fields ⑤ are empty ⑥. In winter, there is no food.
The ant family don't work now. They can relax ⑦. They have a lot of food in their cupboards.

① أكثر برودة ② فصل الشتاء ③ يتحول إلى
④ جليد صلب ⑤ الحقول ⑥ فارغة ⑦ يسترخوا - يستريحوا

**11**

The grasshopper is hungry. He goes to the market ①. There are no market sellers. There is no food.

① السوق






**12**

The grasshopper goes to the ant's house. He is very cold and hungry. He needs some food. The ant is a good friend ①.
She shares ② her food.

① صديقة جيدة ② تشارك



13

In the morning, ① the ant and the grasshopper play. In the afternoon, ② they collect food together.

① في الصباح ② في فترة ما بعد الظهر




## Questions with their model answers

### 1 Complete the following sentences:

1. The ant lives with her ................ .
2. The ant lives with her family next to the ................ .
3. The ant always ................ her family.
4. The ................ is the ant's friend.
5. The grasshopper always ................ .
6. The grasshopper never ................ .
7. It's ................ . It's hot.
8. In the ................, the ant helps her family.
9. They collect lots of ................ and ................ .
10. In the evening, they walk home over the ................ .
11. They work very ................ every day.
12. Every morning, the ant and the grasshopper play ................ .
13. The ant and the grasshopper are good ................ .
14. Every morning, the ant ................ her family.
15. Every morning, the grasshopper ................ .
16. The grasshopper never ................ .
17. The ant wants to ................, but she needs to help her family.
18. The grasshopper ................ at the ant.
19. The grasshopper wants his friend to ................ and play all day.

20. The family needs to collect .................... for winter.
21. In ...................., there isn't any food.
22. The ant and her family all .................... together.
23. The cousins are like .................... .
24. They build .................... .
25. The children are like .................... .
26. The grandparents carefully put all the .................... in the cupboards.
27. It's fall. The grasshopper doesn't have any .................... .
28. The grasshopper is .................... .
29. The grasshopper goes to the .................... for food.
30. The market seller has lots of .................... .
31. It's colder. .................... is here.
32. The river turns to .................... .
33. The .................... are empty.
34. In winter, there is no .................... .
35. The ant and her family don't .................... in winter.
36. The ant and her family .................... in winter.
37. They have a lot of .................... in their cupboards.
38. The grasshopper is .................... . There is no food.
39. The grasshopper goes to the ant's .................... .
40. He is very .................... and hungry.
41. He needs some .................... .
42. The ant is a good .................... .
43. She .................... her food.
44. In the ...................., the ant and the grasshopper play.
45. In the ...................., they collect food together.

## 2 Read and complete:







1. The .................... and the .................... play in the morning.
2. The .................... works every afternoon.
3. The .................... doesn't work in the afternoon.
4. The .................... has food in winter.
5. The .................... doesn't have food in winter.

## 3 Read and circle or write:



1. Did the ant's cousins help the family?
   - Yes, they did. / No, they didn't.
2. Did the ant play in the afternoon?
   - Yes, she did. / No, she didn't.
3. Did the market seller have food in the fall?
   - Yes, he did. / No, he didn't.
4. Did the market seller have food in winter?
   - ........................................................................ .



5. Did the grasshopper work the next summer?
   - ........................................................................ .

## 4 Read and match (A) with (B):

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. The grasshopper was hungry because | a) she worked hard in the summer. |
| 2. The ant relaxed because | b) she helped the grasshopper. |
| 3. The ant is a good friend because | c) he didn't work in the summer. |

## 5 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**family – morning – play – summer – wheat – works**

It's the ① .................... . The ant and the grasshopper play every ② .................... . In the afternoon the, ant helps her ③ .................... on the farm. They collect ④ .................... and corn. The grasshopper never ⑤ .................... . He wants to ⑥ .................... all day.

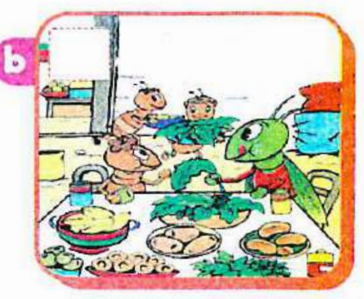


## 6 Choose and match:

1. In summer, the ants (work / play) every morning.

2. The ant helps her family in the afternoon. The grasshopper (sleeps / works).

a 

b 





3. The ant's family (has / doesn't have) lots of food in the winter.



4. The ants (shares / doesn't share) her food with the grasshopper.

## 7 Read and match (A) with (B):

| (A) | (B) |
|---|---|
| 1. When do the ant and the grasshopper play? | a) Because he hasn't got any food. |
| 2. When do the ant and her family work on the farm? | b) In the afternoon. |
| 3. Why do the ant and her family have food in winter? | c) In the morning. |
| 4. Why is the grasshopper hungry in winter? | d) Because they collect food in summer. |

## 8 Read and complete the text with the words from the box:

**collects – isn't – has – works**

Next summer, the grasshopper ① .................... in the afternoon. He ② .................... food for the winter. Next winter, the grasshopper ③ .................... lots of food. He ④ .................... hungry. He's happy!



# Answers

## 1 Complete the following sentences:

1. family
2. river
3. helps
4. grasshopper
5. plays
6. helps
7. summer
8. afternoon
9. wheat - corn
10. bridge
11. hard
12. together
13. friends
14. helps
15. sleeps
16. .works
17. play
18. laughs
19. stay
20. food
21. winter
22. work
23. construction workers
24. cupboards
25. farmers
26. food
27. food
28. hungry
29. market
30. food
31. Winter
32. solid ice
33. fields
34. food
35. work
36. relax
37. food
38. hungry
39. house
40. cold
41. food
42. friend
43. shares
44. morning
45. afternoon

## 2 Read and complete:

1. ant - grasshopper
2. ant
3. grasshopper
4. ant
5. grasshopper

## 3 Read and circle or write:

1. Yes, they did.
2. No, she didn't.
3. Yes, he did.
4. No, he didn't.
5. Yes, he did.

## 4 Read and match (A) with (B):

| 1. c) | 2. a) | 3. b) |
|---|---|---|

## 5 Read and complete:

1. summer
2. morning
3. family
4. wheat
5. works
6. play

## 6 Choose and match:

1. work → c
2. sleeps → d
3. has → a
4. shares → b

## 7 Read and match (A) with (B):

| 1. c | 2. b | 3. d | 4. a |
|---|---|---|---|

## 8 Read and complete:

1. works
2. collects
3. has
4. isn't




# CONNECT Plus

2nd Prim.

2025

Second Term

Units Revision

Revision Tests

Answer Key




*By a group of specialists*

# Contents

# Revision on Unit 7

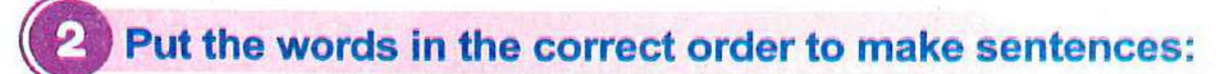
## 1 Match (A) with (B):

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. Why do you cycle to school? | a) oases in the desert. |
| 2. Do we get eggs from goats? | b) It's cloudy. |
| 3. We go to school | c) To keep fit. |
| 4. There are | d) to learn about the world. |
| | e) No, we don't. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. We recycle paper and plastic | a) No, we haven't. |
| 2. Did you go to a museum? | b) Yes, we do. |
| 3. We went on a | c) to look after the environment. |
| 4. Do we get milk from cows? | d) No, we didn't. |
| | e) school trip yesterday. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. There are lots of places | a) deserts in Egypt. |
| 2. There is | b) To keep fit. |
| 3. Why do we exercise? | c) because it is windy. |
| 4. There are | d) in Egypt. |
| | e) a lake. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. What's the weather like today? | a) in summer. |
| 2. It's cold | b) It was sunny. |
| 3. What was the weather like yesterday? | c) It's windy. |
| 4. It's hot | d) in winter. |
| | e) good for farming. |



## 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. went - on - a school trip - We - yesterday.
▶ .................................................................... .

2. to - Did - go - you - a museum?
▶ .................................................................... ?

3. We went - to learn - to a farm - animals - about.
▶ .................................................................... .

4. sounds - fun - That.
▶ .................................................................... .

5. animal - learned - products - about - We.
▶ .................................................................... .

6. to see - We - to a farm - went - animals.
▶ .................................................................... .

7. has - wings, . and a beak - feathers - It.
▶ .................................................................... .

8. four - has - It - legs.
▶ .................................................................... .

9. lives - in - water - It.
▶ .................................................................... .

10. get - Do we - from - milk - ducks?
▶ .................................................................... ?

11. wool - from - sheep - We - get.
▶ .................................................................... .

12. get - We - from - eggs - chickens.
▶ .................................................................... .

13. The - is - horse - animal - a big.
▶ .................................................................... .

14. do - Why - we - up - tidy?
▶ .................................................................... ?

15. We - to learn - go - school - to.

▶ .................................................................................................... .

16. exercise - do - Why - we?

▶ .................................................................................................... ?

17. to keep - tidy up - our house - We - tidy.

▶ ....................................................................................................

## 3 Supply the missing letters:



d _ _ _ _ _



m _ _ _ _ _ _ _



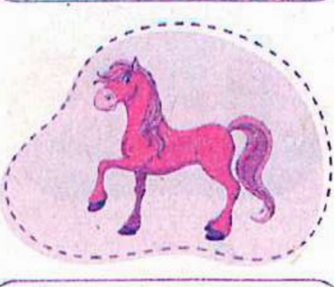
f _ _ _ _ _ _ _



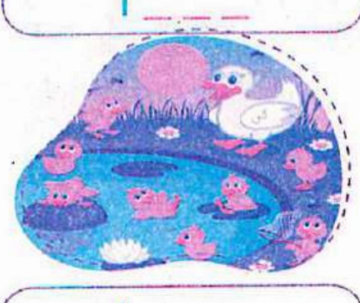
f _ _ _



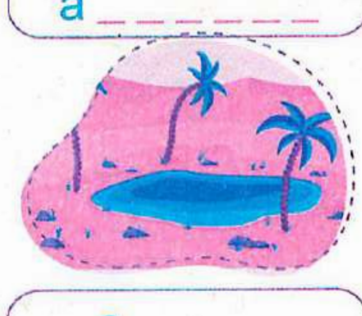
a _ _ _ _ _ _



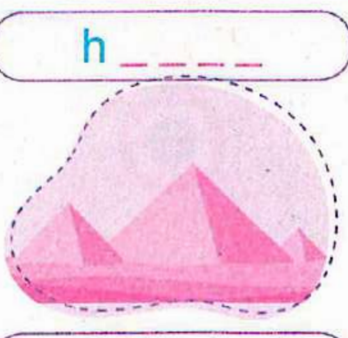
h _ _ _ _



l _ _ _



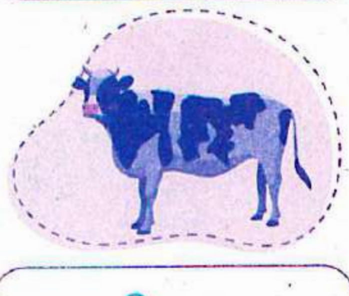
o _ _ _ _



p _ _ _ _ _ _ _



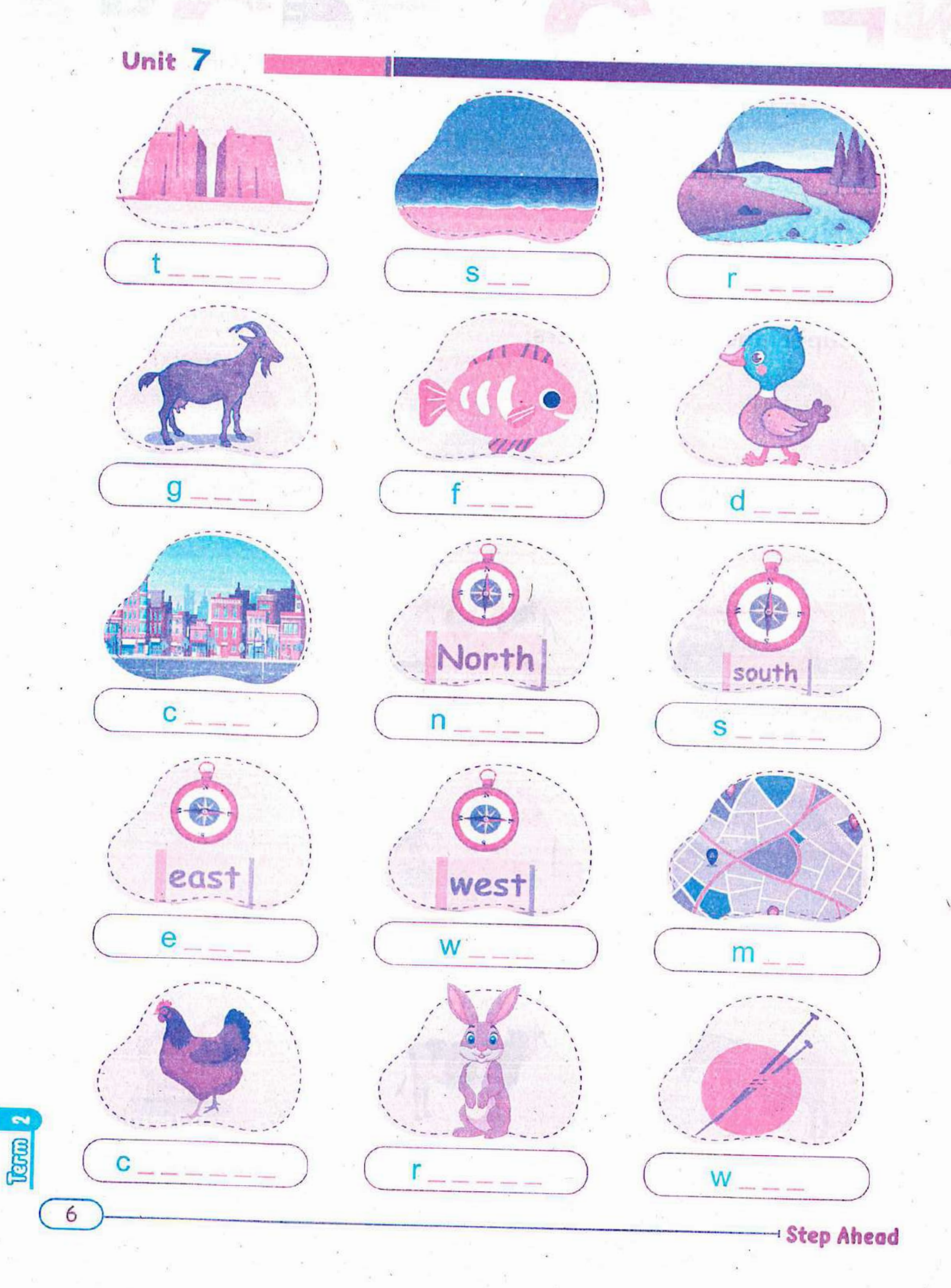
d _ _ _ _ _

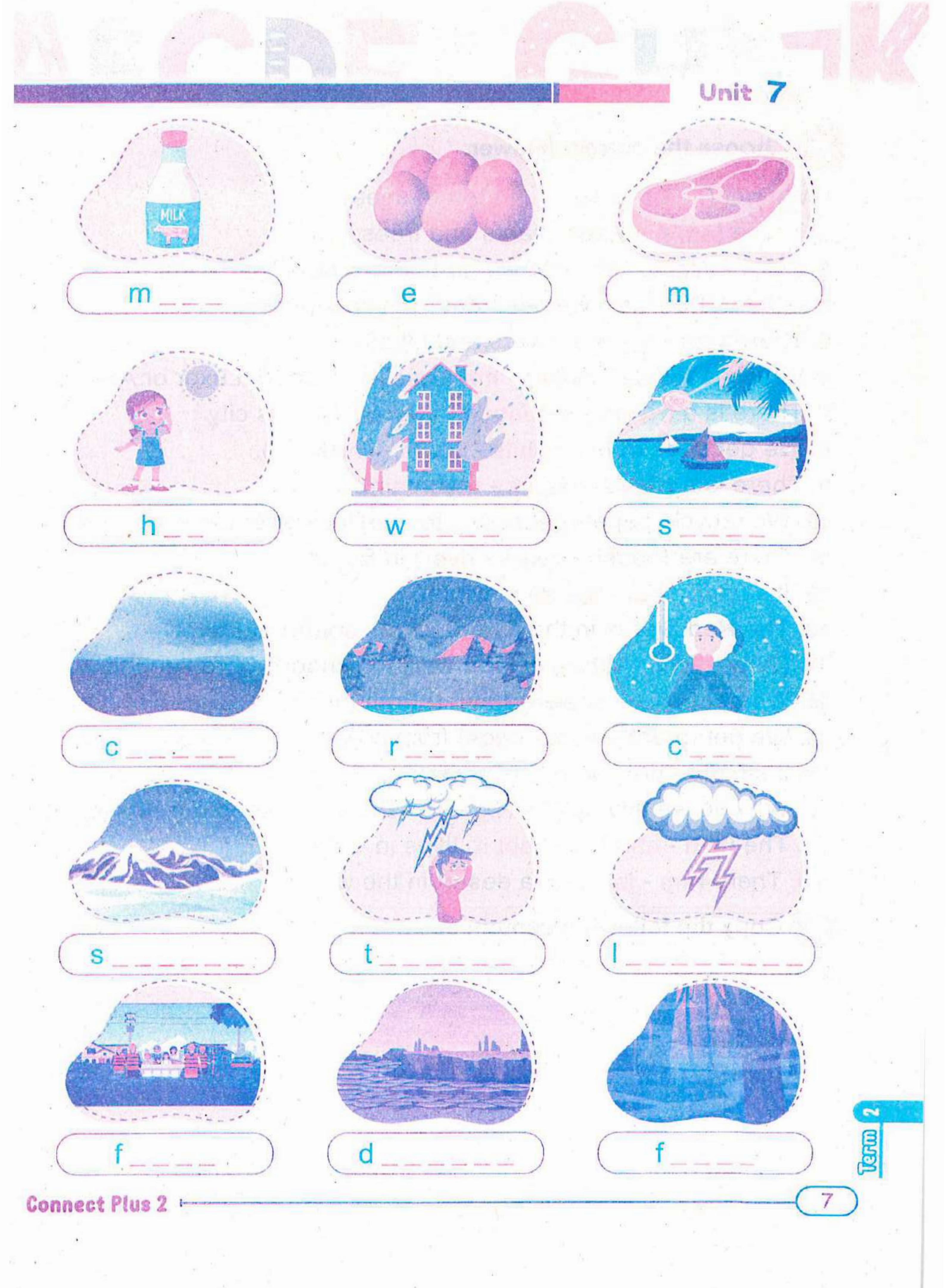


c _ _



s _ _ _ _


Unit 7
t_ _ _ _ _
s_ _
r_ _ _ _
g_ _ _
f_ _ _
d_ _ _
c_ _ _
North
n_ _ _ _
south
s_ _ _ _
east
e_ _ _
west
w_ _ _
m_ _
c_ _ _ _ _ _
r_ _ _ _ _
w_ _ _
Term 2
6
Step Ahead


MILK
m _ _ _
e _ _ _
m _ _ _
h _ _
w _ _ _ _
s _ _ _ _
c _ _ _ _ _
r _ _ _ _
c _ _ _
s _ _ _ _ _
t _ _ _ _ _ _
l _ _ _ _ _ _ _
f _ _ _ _
d _ _ _ _ _ _
f _ _ _ _

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. We get (eggs - wool - juice) from sheep.
2. There (am - is - are) plants and trees.
3. (Why - What - Who) do we go to the school? - To learn.
4. (Have - Do - Are) we get meat from sheep?
5. There (am - is - are) rivers and lakes.
6. Which is (close - closer - the closest) to Cairo, Luxor or Aswan?
7. There is a (rivers - mountains - temple) in this city.
8. We get eggs from (rabbits - goats - chickens).
9. There is a (oasis - oases - mountain).
10. We recycle paper (because - to - so) look after the environment.
11. There are (beach - lakes - river) in Egypt.
12. It's (cold - hot - warm) in winter.
13. The Red Sea is in the (east - west - south) of Egypt.
14. (Why - Who - What) do you walk to school? - To keep fit.
15. We get (eggs - cheese - meat) from milk.
16. We get (meat - wool - eggs) from cows.
17. It's (cold - hot - warm) in summer.
18. Why do we tidy up? - (So - To - Because) keep our house tidy.
19. The (fish - chicken - rabbit) lives in water.
20. There (am - is - are) a desert in the west.

## 5 Copy the following sentence:



Warm weather is good for farming.







## 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. Why do we tidy up? | a) the east. |
| 2. The Red Sea is in | b) It was foggy. |
| 3. What's the weather like today? | c) from sheep. |
| 4. We get wool | d) To keep our house tidy. |
| | e) It's cool. |

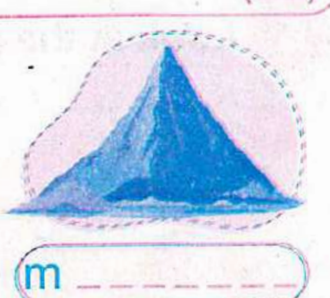
## 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)


r _ _ _ _ _ _


w _ _ _ _ _



s _ _ _ _ _


m _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

## 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. (Why - What - Who) do we go to the library?
2. There (am - is - are) a lake.
3. The (sheep - goat - duck) has got wings and feathers.
4. (Which - What - Why) is the weather like?
5. We exercise (because - so - to) keep fit.
6. There (am - is - are) temples and mountains.
7. Do we get milk from cows? - Yes, we (are - do - don't).
8. The Mediterranean Sea is in the (north - south - west) of Egypt.

## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

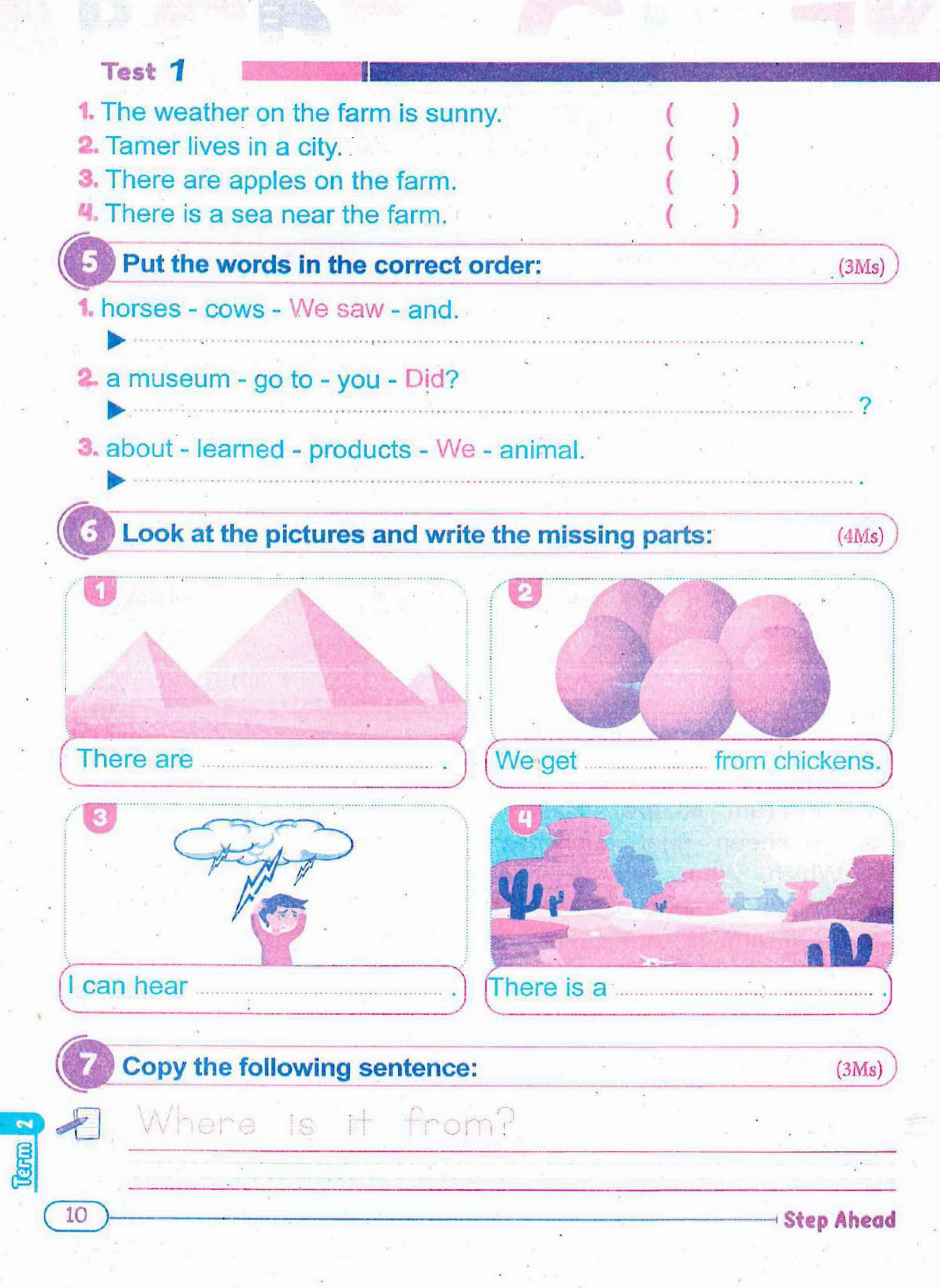
My friend Tamer lives on a farm. He has got many cows and goats. The weather there is sunny. There are many plants like grapes and oranges. There is a lake near the farm.

1. The weather on the farm is sunny. ( )
2. Tamer lives in a city. ( )
3. There are apples on the farm. ( )
4. There is a sea near the farm. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. horses - cows - We saw - and.
   ▶ .................................................................................... .
2. a museum - go to - you - Did?
   ▶ .................................................................................... ?
3. about - learned - products - We - animal.
   ▶ .................................................................................... .

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)



1. There are .................................... .
2. We get .................... from chickens.
3. I can hear .................................... .
4. There is a .................................... .

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

Where is it from?

# Revision on Unit 8

## 1 Match (A) with (B):

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. Where would you like to go? | a) It's seven forty-five. |
| 2. What do you need? | b) It's opposite the school. |
| 3. What time is it? | c) He's a co-pilot. |
| 4. Where's the park? | d) I need my school bag. |
| | e) I would like to go to the hospital. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. A ferry stops at | a) an airport. |
| 2. A train stops at | b) sky. |
| 3. A car and a taxi stop at | c) a port. |
| 4. An airplane stops at | d) a station. |
| | e) a gas station. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. Airplanes travel in | a) By taxi. |
| 2. Boats travel in | b) the sky. |
| 3. Cars travel on | c) a railroad. |
| 4. Trains travel on | d) water. |
| | e) a highway. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. A mechanic | a) help the passengers. |
| 2. A station master | b) drives cars. |
| 3. A conductor | c) checks the engines. |
| 4. Flight attendants | d) checks the passengers' tickets. |
| | e) helps people at the station. |

## Unit 8

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. A pilot | a) help drivers. |
| 2. A railroad engineer | b) sells tickets. |
| 3. A co-pilot | c) flies a plane. |
| 4. A ticket agent | d) drives the train. |
| | e) helps the pilot. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. Train times are on a | a) the times of the trains. |
| 2. Passengers | b) in charge of the station. |
| 3. A station master is | c) timetable. |
| 4. A schedule tells | d) fixes anything. |
| | e) get on and off a train. |

### 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. There - twelve - are - on the clock - hours.
▶ ..........................................................................
2. has - 60 - minutes - An hour.
▶ ..........................................................................
3. past - It's - two - quarter.
▶ ..........................................................................
4. now - What - it - is - time?
▶ ..........................................................................
5. Dad - Yousef - and - to Giza - are travelling.
▶ ..........................................................................
6. platform - do we - Which - need to - go to?
▶ ..........................................................................
7. buy - a ticket - here - I - Can?
▶ ..........................................................................
8. three - platform - is - Where?
▶ ..........................................................................

9. a - Have - trip - good.

▶ ..................................................................

10. many - are - How - travelling - people?

▶ ..................................................................

11. like - Would - to go - to Giza - you?

▶ ..................................................................

12. Go - straight on. - Then - turn right.

▶ ..................................................................

13. for the train- need to - You - a ticket - buy.

▶ ..................................................................

14. transport - are - These - jobs.

▶ ..................................................................

15. A train master - people - helps - station - at the.

▶ ..................................................................

16. drives - the - A - train - railroad engineer.

▶ ..................................................................

17. tells - the times - of the trains - passengers - A schedule.

▶ ..................................................................

## 3 Supply the missing letters:

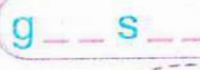






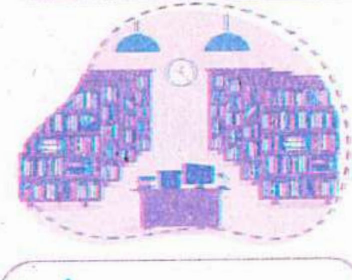


a _ _ _ _ _ 

g _ _ s _ _ _ _ _ _ 

c _ _ _





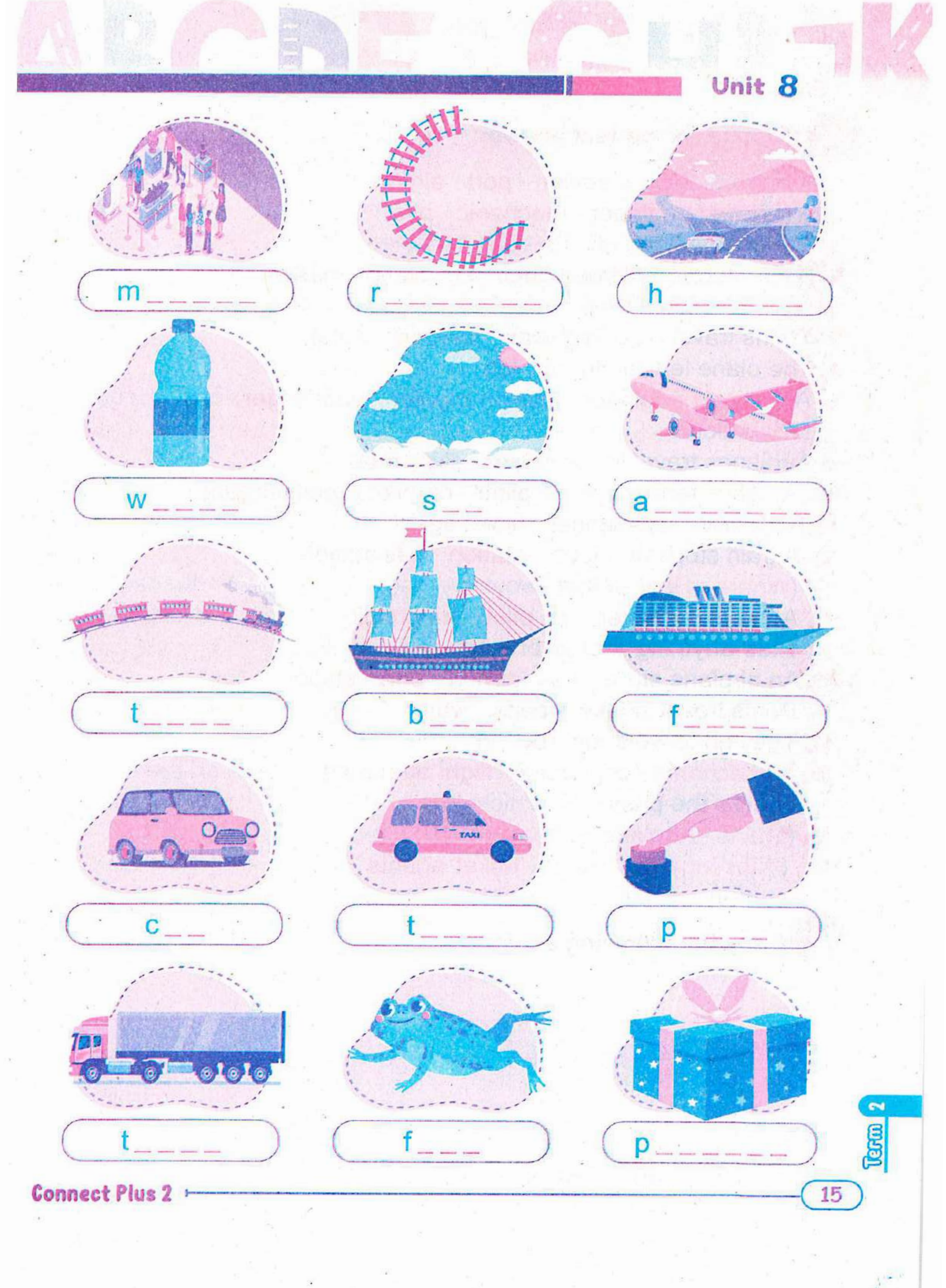
s_______

l _ _ _ _ _ _ 

p _ _ _

Term 2


s _ _ _ _ _ m _ _ _ _ _
p _ _ _ _
p _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
m _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
DEPARTURES 08:30
s _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
r _ _ _ _ _ _ e _ _ _ _ _ _
co-p _ _ _ _
m _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
t _ _ _ _ _ a _ _ _
f _ _ _ _ a _ _ _ _ _ _
e _ _ _ _ _
f _ _
s _ _ _ _ _ _
r _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
s _ _ _ _
Term 2


m_____
r______
h______
w____
s__
a_______
t____
b___
f____
c__
TAXI
t___
p____
t____
f___
p______

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. A ferry stops at a (station - port - airport).
2. A (railroad engineer - mechanic - pilot) flies a plane.
3. We go to Aswan (by - in - on) airplane.
4. A (conductor - railroad engineer - station master) drives the train.
5. (Where - How - Who) would you like to go? - To Aswan.
6. Trains travel on a (highway - railroad - water).
7. The plane leaves (in - at - on) two thirty.
8. A (railroad engineer - station master - passenger) helps people at the station.
9. Airplanes travel in the (water - sky - road).
10. A flight attendant helps (pilots - co-pilots - passengers) on the plane.
11. A (co-pilot - passenger - ticket agent) helps the pilot.
12. A train stops at a (port - station - gas station).
13. (Where - How - What) would you go to Port Said? - By car.
14. A (station master - co-pilot - mechanic) checks the engines and fixes anything that is broken.
15. An airplane stops at an (airport - port - station).
16. Boats travel in (sky - roads - water).
17. They go to work (on - by - in) car.
18. A (mechanic - conductor - flight attendant) travels on the train and checks the passengers' tickets.
19. (Trains - Airplanes - Boats) are the fastest way to travel.
20. (Passengers - Pilots - Ticket agents) get on and off a train at a station.

## 5 Copy the following sentence:

I'm always on time.




## Unit 8 Test 2

### 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. Can I help you? | a) One adult and one child, please |
| 2. Can I buy a ticket here? | b) Here you are. |
| 3. How many people are traveling? | c) I would like to go to Luxor, please. |
| 4. That will be 180 pounds. | d) Yes, you can. |
| | e) It's cool. |

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)






m ________ r ________ a ________ l ______

### 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. A car and a taxi stop at a (gas station - port - airport).
2. A (ticket agent - station master - co-pilot) sells tickets to passengers.
3. He goes to Cairo (in - on - by) train.
4. A (clock - notebook - schedule) tells passengers the times of the trains.
5. An airplane stops at an (airport - port - station).
6. (Who - Where - How) would you go to Luxor? - By boat.
7. A (flight attendant - ticket agent - co-pilot) helps passengers on a plane.
8. Cars travel on a (highway - railroad - sky).

## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

My grandpa has two sons. One is my dad Ali. He is a doctor. He works in a hospital. The other one is my uncle Hesham. He is a police officer. He works in a police station. My grandpa works in a store. He's a storekeeper.

1. My uncle works in a store. ( )
2. My dad is a doctor. ( )
3. My grandpa has two friends, Ali and Hesham. ( )
4. Hesham is a police officer. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. Cairo - I would - like to - by train - go to. ▶ ................................ .
2. go to - How would - you - Luxor ? ▶ ................................ ?
3. An airplane - at - an airport - stops. ▶ ................................ .

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1

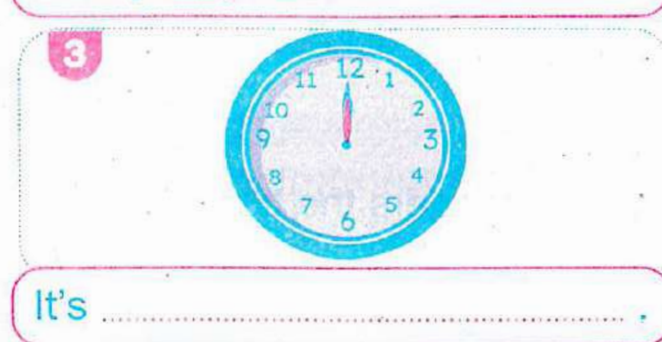


A ferry stops at a ........................ .

2

It's ................................ .

3



It's ................................ .

4



She's a ................................ .

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)



Don't get lost.

# Revision on Unit 9

## 1 Match (A) with (B):

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. What do I have to do? | a) very big mouth. |
| 2. The hippo has a | b) recycling bin. |
| 3. I don't have to | c) the tallest animal. |
| 4. The giraffe is | d) go to the doctor. I'm not ill. |
| | e) You have to pick up trash. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. I had to | a) a picture of a lizard last week. |
| 2. I draw | b) go to bed early today. |
| 3. I have to | c) tidied my bedroom. |
| 4. I drew | d) help my mom yesterday. |
| | e) a picture of a monkey today. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. The bike costs about | a) food and water. |
| 2. A lot of the population live | b) the biggest reptile. |
| 3. The Nile crocodile is | c) 2000 Egyptian pounds. |
| 4. People need the river for | d) dams in the river. |
| | e) next to the River Nile. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. two hundred thousand | a) 6000 |
| 2. nine million | b) 800 |
| 3. eight hundred | c) 200,000 |
| 4. six thousand | d) 9,000,000 |
| | e) 9,000 |

## 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. to do - I - my - have - homework.
▶ ................................................................ .

2. run - the most - They - quickly - of all.
▶ ................................................................ .

3. lives - on - and water - land - A hippo.
▶ ................................................................ .

4. find out - about - have to - African animals - We.
▶ ................................................................ .

5. The elephant - land animal - the biggest - is.
▶ ................................................................ .

6. grows up - It - to - tall - three metres.
▶ ................................................................ .

7. short - The - hippo - legs - has.
▶ ................................................................ .

8. hippos - are - dangerous - Why?
▶ ................................................................ ?

9. keep - clean - our - We - country.
▶ ................................................................ .

10. recycle - Do - have to - We - plastic?
▶ ................................................................ ?

11. What - do we - else - to do - have?
▶ ................................................................ ?

12. our - We have - school - to do - project.
▶ ................................................................ .

13. an important - Weaving - tradition - is - in Egypt.
▶ ................................................................ .

**14.** People - carpets - weave - and cloth.

▶ ................................................................................................................................ .

**15.** try - always - hard - I.

▶ ................................................................................................................................ .

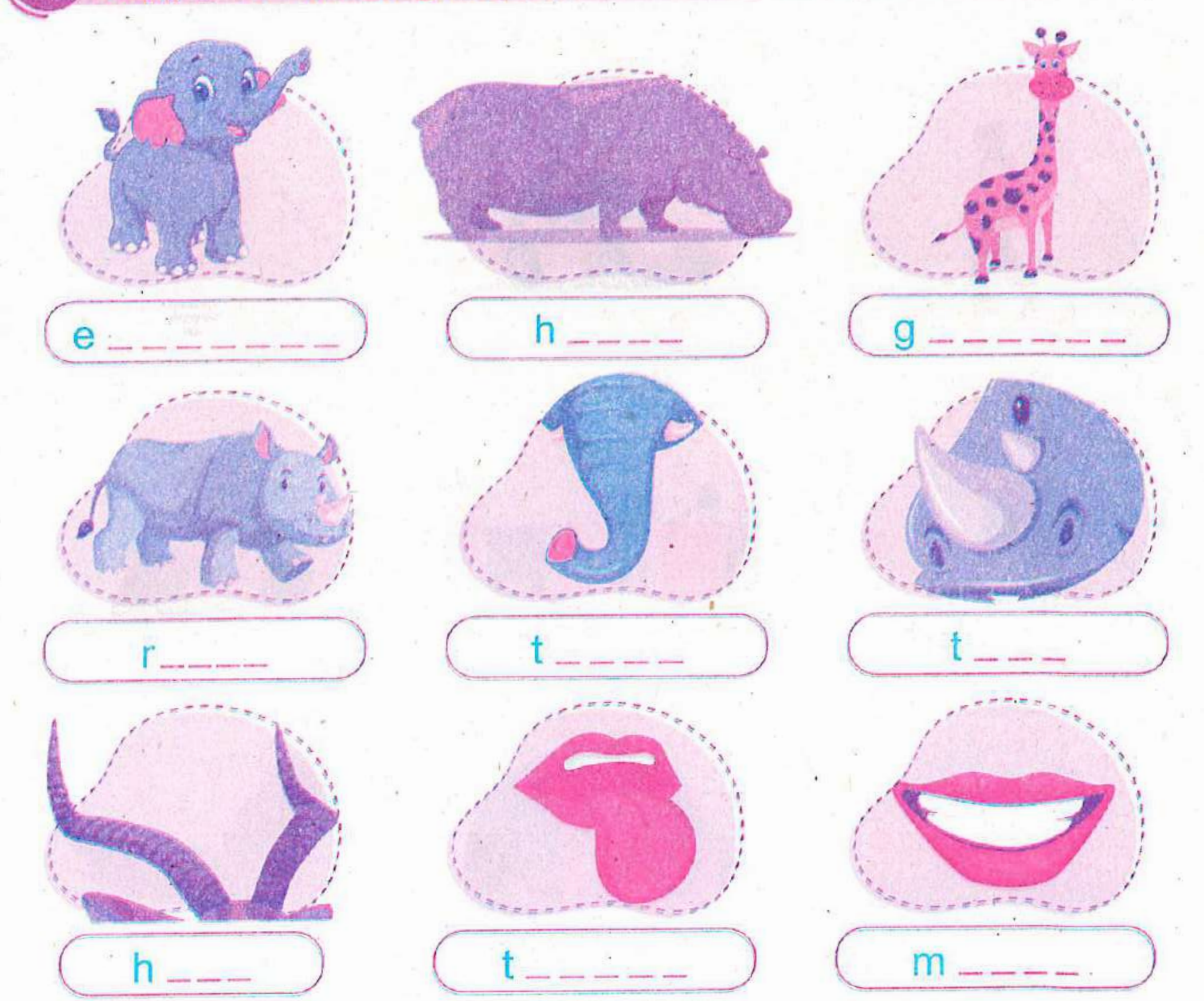
**16.** One hundred - live in - people - million - Egypt.

▶ ................................................................................................................................ .

**17.** reptile - like - Which - do - you - best?

▶ ................................................................................................................................ ?

## 3 Supply the missing letters:




t_ _ _ _
n_ _ _
l_ _ _
w_ _ _ _
s_ _ _ _ _
b_ _ _
w_ _ _
d_ _ _ _
l_ _ _ _
t_ _ _ _ b_ _
GLASS
PLASTIC
PAPER
r_ _ _ _ _ _ _
t_ _ _ _
g_ _ _ _ _
l_ _ _ _ _
f_ _




## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. I (don't have to - have to - had to) go to school on holidays.
2. I (has to - have to - had to) go to the school club today.
3. The hippo can run (fast - faster - fastest) than the rhino.
4. The baby (cry - cries - crying).
5. We (go - goes - went) to the market yesterday.
6. Horses run (the most - the least - more) quickly than zebras.
7. I (visit - visited - visits) my friend last week.
8. Babies (cry - cries - crying).
9. The giraffe is the (taller - tallest - the tallest) land animal.
10. I (had to - have to - don't have to) help my mom yesterday.
11. The bird can (fly - flies - flying).
12. Hippos run (the least quickly - the most quickly - less quickly) than giraffes.
13. It can run (the least - more - less) quickly of them all.

14. I (trying - try - tries) hard.
15. I (write - wrote - writes) about a giraffe today.
16. I (have to - don't have to - had to) save energy eve. y day.
17. The elephant is (bigger - biggest - the biggest) land animal.
18. I (have to - has to - had to) get up early today.
19. She (draws - drew - draw) a picture last week.
20. Giraffes run (the most quickly- more quickly- less quickly) of them all.
21. She (dry - dries - drying) her hair.
22. I (do - does - did) my homework yesterday.
23. Which animal do you like (good - bad - best)?
24. Mom (fries - fry - frying) some potatoes.
25. I (frying - fry - fries) some chicken.
26. He (try - trying - tries) harder.
27. I like the monkey (best - bad - good).
28. It (fly - flying - flies) to the tree.

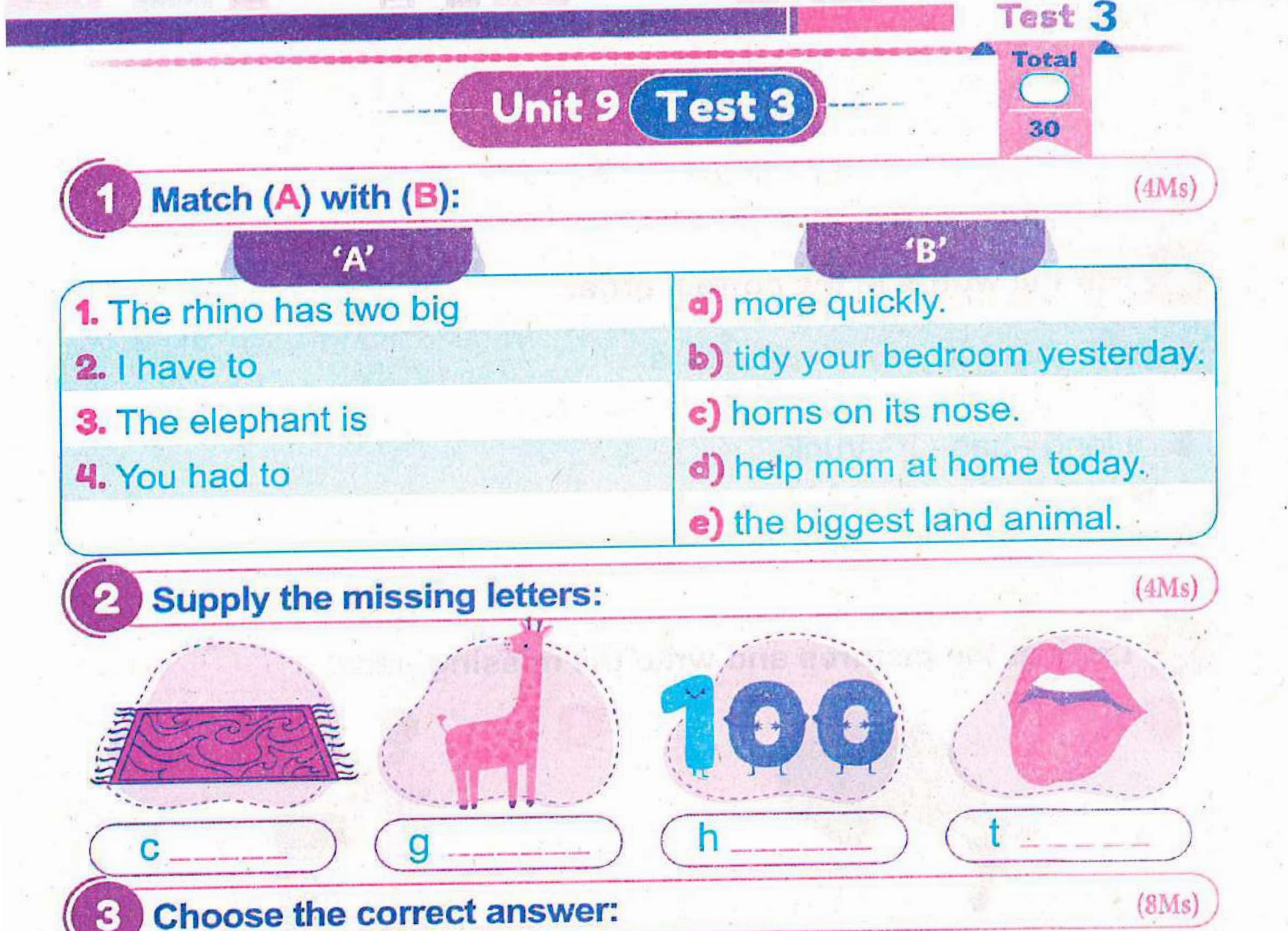
## 5 Copy the following sentence:


I'm faster than my brother.



Total ___ / 30

## Unit 9 Test 3



### 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. The rhino has two big | a) more quickly. |
| 2. I have to | b) tidy your bedroom yesterday. |
| 3. The elephant is | c) horns on its nose. |
| 4. You had to | d) help mom at home today. |
| | e) the biggest land animal. |

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)

c ______ g ______ h ______ t ______

### 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. Rhinos run (more quickly - the most quickly - the least quickly) than elephants.
2. He (fry - fries - frying) an egg.
3. Dina (write - writes - wrote) about an elephant last week.
4. Today, I (have to - has to - had to) tidy my bedroom.
5. The lion is (the strongest - strong - stronger) than the fox.
6. I (has to - have to - had to) walk to school at 7:30 yesterday.
7. Elephants run (less quickly - the least quickly - more quickly) of them all.
8. I had to (go - goes - went) to bed early yesterday.

### 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

We see many animals at the zoo. The elephant is very big. It is bigger than the zebra. The giraffe is taller than the lion. The monkey is a funny animal. The snake is long. It hasn't got legs.

1. The elephant is bigger than the monkey. ( )
2. The snake has got two legs. ( )
3. The monkey is a sad animal. ( )
4. The giraffe is taller than the lion. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. gray - big and - An elephant - is.

▶ ..........................................................................................

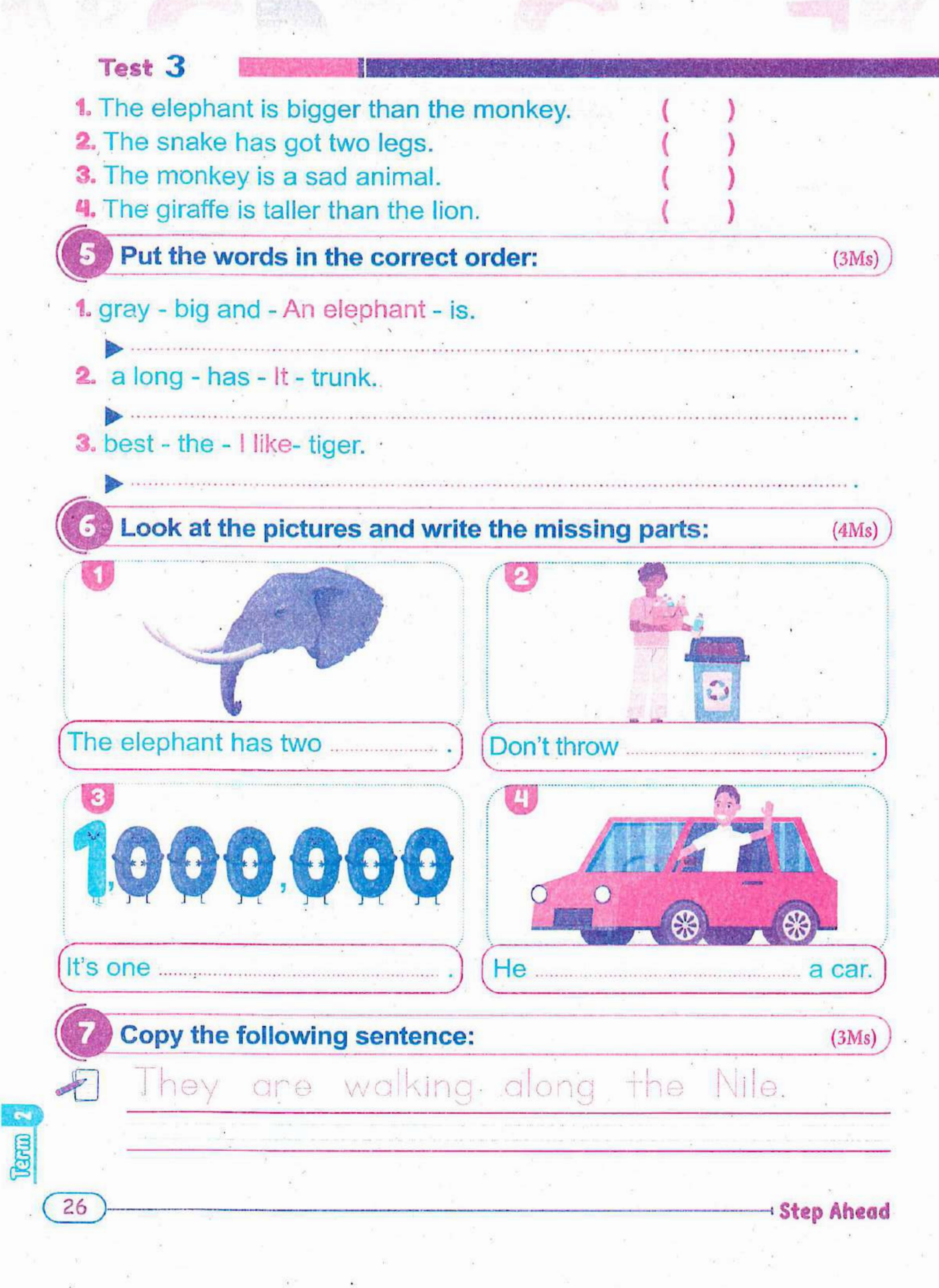
2. a long - has - It - trunk.

▶ ..........................................................................................

3. best - the - I like- tiger.

▶ ..........................................................................................

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)



1. The elephant has two .................... .
2. Don't throw .......................................... .
3. It's one .......................................... .
4. He .......................................... a car.

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

They are walking along the Nile.

..........................................................................................

# Revision on Unit 10

## 1 Match (A) with (B):

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. It was hot and sunny, | a) because she's a doctor. |
| 2. Grandpa was tired, | b) and a green sweater. |
| 3. I don't have to go to school | c) and doing gymnastics. |
| 4. He's wearing blue jeans | d) so he stayed in bed. |
| 5. Miss Dalida works in a hospital | e) so we went to the beach. |
| 6. He likes playing football | f) because today is a holiday. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. We need to | a) No, I don't. |
| 2. Do you prefer cooking? | b) to buy some bread. |
| 3. I live with | c) to buy meat. |
| 4. I went to the bakery | d) my mom and dad. |
| | e) buy some milk. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. Omar likes reading books | a) but she doesn't like playing football. |
| 2. We didn't go to school yesterday | b) and magazines. |
| 3. Laila loves playing volleyball, | c) so I ate two sandwiches. |
| 4. I was hungry, | d) because it was Friday. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. A police officer can help | a) sport. |
| 2. He hates watching | b) to music. |
| 3. Khalid likes listening | c) by bus. |
| 4. I don't like video games. I prefer doing | d) television. |
| 5. My mom doesn't like traveling | e) in an emergency. |
| 6. My mom doesn't like listening | f) English. |



## 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. I - shopping - at the - supermarket - like.
   ▶ ................................................................ .
2. are - Yousef and - in a store - his dad.
   ▶ ................................................................ .
3. making - cakes - I - like.
   ▶ ................................................................ .
4. did - What - you - do - today?
   ▶ ................................................................ ?
5. she - Did - buy - any - clothes?
   ▶ ................................................................ ?
6. shopping for - I - hate - shoes.
   ▶ ................................................................ .
7. with my - shopping - went - I - dad.
   ▶ ................................................................ .
8. cooking - enjoys - She.
   ▶ ................................................................ .
9. prefers - He - cake - eating.
   ▶ ................................................................ .
10. seeing - I - my - cousins - love.
    ▶ ................................................................ .
11. We didn't - to school - go - yesterday.
    ▶ ................................................................ .
12. This - expensive - is - car.
    ▶ ................................................................ .
13. they - Were - expensive?
    ▶ ................................................................ .
14. at the - pay - We - check out.
    ▶ ................................................................ .
15. much - rice - is - How - this?
    ▶ ................................................................ ?



Unit 10

**16.** I - you - eight L.E - owe - change.

▶ ..........................................................................................

**17.** does it - How much - cost?

▶ ..........................................................................................?

## 3 Supply the missing letters:

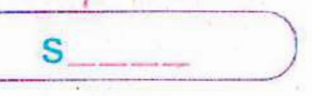
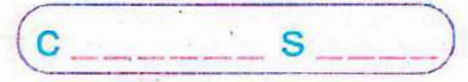
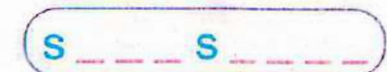




s _ _ _ _ _ _ _    s _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _    m _ _ _ _ _



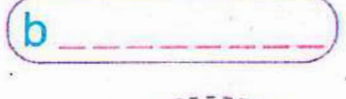


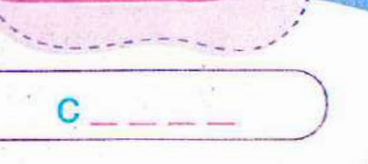
s _ _ _ _    c _ _ _ _ _ _ s _ _ _ _    s _ _ _ s _ _ _ _





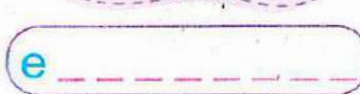



b _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _    b _ _ _ _ _    b _ _ _ _ _ _ _









c _ _ _ _    e _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _    c _ _ _ _ out


Unit 10
EGYPT
addressed to:
l _ _ _ _ _
e _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
s _ _ _ _ _
e _ _ _ _
a _ _ _ _ _ _ _
p _ _ _ _
a _ _
e _ _
h _ _ _
c _ _ _ _
b _ _ _ _
s _ _ _
m _ _ _ _
f _ _ _ _ _ _
s _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _
30
Step Ahead
Term 2

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. Do you enjoy (watch - to watch - watching) films on TV?
2. He went to the clothes store to buy shirts (but - and - so) T-shirts.
3. She doesn't like (drink - drinking - drinks) cola.
4. I like sweets, (but - because - so) I don't like ice cream.
5. Here (am - is - are) an apple.
6. I was thirsty, (so - but - because) I drank a bottle of water.
7. I'm making juice (so - but - because) I like drinking juice.
8. I enjoy (shop - shopping - to shop).
9. The figs are (cheap - expensive). They aren't expensive.
10. We went to the bakery (because - and - so) we needed to buy bread.
11. My sister loves (listen - listens - listening) to songs.
12. I don't like painting, (so - because - but) I like reading.
13. My parents hate (to traveling - traveling - travel to) by plane.
14. I was hungry, (but - so - because) I made a sandwich.
15. My grandma doesn't like (drink - drinks - drinking) tea.
16. They went to the shoe store, (but - so - because) it was closed.
17. This laptop is (cheap - expensive). It's not cheap.
18. My brother prefers (make - making - makes) sandwiches.
19. She went to the shoe store to buy shoes (and - so - because) boots.
20. Here (am - is - are) some oranges.

## 6 Copy the following sentence:



I buy lots of things.

_______________________________________________

_______________________________________________

## Unit 10 Test 4




### 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. A principal is in | a) buy things in stores. |
| 2. What did you do yesterday? | b) eating ice cream. |
| 3. Doctors and nurses help us if | c) charge of a school. |
| 4. I enjoy | d) we are sick. |
| | e) I went shopping. |

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)







s _ _ _ _ _ _ _ s _ _ _ _ s _ _ _ b _ _ _ _ _

### 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. They hate (to traveling - traveling - travel to) by ship.
2. This bike is (cheap - expensive). It's not cheap.
3. I was hungry, (but - so - because) I made a sandwich.
4. My brother prefers (draw - drawing - draws).
5. I went to the butcher's (because - and - so) I needed to buy meat.
6. Five LE coins and a ten LE note is (fifty - fifteen - twenty) pounds.
7. He went to the clothes store to buy a hat (and - so - because) a shirt.
8. I don't like playing tennis, (so - because - but) I like football.

### 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

I go to the market with my mom. There are lots of fruits and vegetables in the market. I like red apples. Our basket is full of fruits such as bananas, oranges, pears and grapes. We don't buy any melons.





1. He likes red apples. ( )
2. There are some melons in the basket. ( )
3. They buy grapes and tomatoes. ( )
4. They buy oranges and pears. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. are - Yousef and his dad - in - a store.
▶ ..........................................................

2. today - What - you do - did?
▶ ..........................................................

3. brother - I went - with my - shopping.
▶ ..........................................................

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)



1. We pay at the .................................. .
2. It's a .................................. .
3. This hat is .................................. .
4. It's the .................................. .

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

I like buying sweets.

..........................................................

# Revision on Unit 11

## 1 Match (A) with (B):

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. The drum is a | a) good band. |
| 2. The reed pipe is a | b) string instrument. |
| 3. What an | c) percussion instrument. |
| 4. The oud is a | d) amazing show! |
| | e) wind instrument. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. The teacher wants us to tidy the classroom. | a) "Nesma, can you play the guitar, please?" |
| 2. "Let's ask your brother to be in our show." | b) "Dad, can you sing a song, please?" |
| 3. He wants his sister to play the guitar. | c) "Fares, can you be in our show, please?" |
| 4. "Let's ask Dad to sing a song." | d) "Can you tidy the classroom, please?" |

## 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. musicians - The - fantastic - are.
   ▶ ........................................................................ .
2. a lovely - It's - song.
   ▶ ........................................................................ .
3. He - very well - sing - can.
   ▶ ........................................................................ .
4. an - What - show - amazing!
   ▶ ........................................................................ !
5. instruments - Their - fantastic - are.
   ▶ ........................................................................ .
6. a string - An oud - instrument - is.
   ▶ ........................................................................ .

7. celebrating - I - Eid Al-Fitr - love.

▶ ................................................................ .

8. in Cairo - live - Lots of people.

▶ ................................................................ .

9. Nubia - Where - is?

▶ ................................................................ ?

10. There are - many - of music - types.

▶ ................................................................ .

11. in the - Aswan - is - south of - Egypt.

▶ ................................................................ .

12. the - National anthem - sing - Let's.

▶ ................................................................ .

13. decorate - our home - We.

▶ ................................................................ .

14. wearing - costumes - They're.

▶ ................................................................ .

15. the biggest city - is - Cairo.

▶ ................................................................ .

16. When - Sham El-Nessim - is?

▶ ................................................................ ?

17. very - They - pretty - look.

▶ ................................................................ .

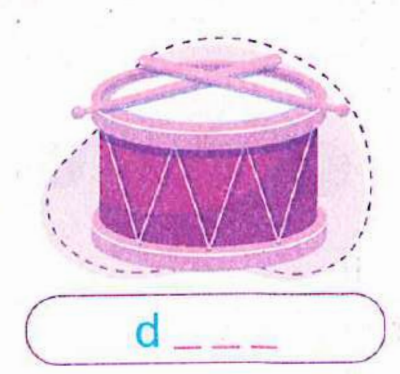
## 3 Supply the missing letters:



p _ _ _ _



q _ _ _ _



d _ _ _

v_ _ _ _ _

f_ _ _ _ _

g_ _ _ _ _ _

r_ _ _ p_ _ _

t_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

b_ _ _ _ _ _ _

c_ _ _ _ _ _ _

s_ _ _ _ _ _

o_ _

s_ _ _ _ _ _

s_ _ _ _ _ _

i_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

s_ _ _ _ _ _

s_ _ _ _ _ _

c_ _ _ _ _ _ _

## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. What (a - an - the) amazing movie!
2. He's singing a (singer - sing - song).
3. They have traditional (instruments - musicians - country).
4. Let's (asks - asking - ask) our teacher to have a concert.
5. They're playing (folk music - folk dance - folktale).
6. They're telling a (folk dance - folk tale - folk music).
7. They're (eating - playing - wearing) costumes.
8. The tambourine is a (wind - percussion - string) instrument.
9. They're performing a (dancer - dance - dancing).
10. He wants his friend to (kick - hit - play) the flute.
11. They're (wearing - playing - blowing) costumes.
12. The bagpipe is a (wind - percussion - string) instrument.
13. (Where - Which - What) a colorful costume!
14. The (national - traditional - popular) anthem is a song that the people of a country sing.
15. The guitar is a (wind - percussion - string) instrument.
16. The (dancer - dance - folk dance) has a beautiful costume.

## 5 Copy the following sentence:




Term 2



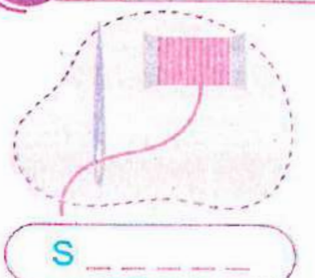

## Unit 11 Test 5

### 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. The bagpipe is a | a) string instrument. |
| 2. The tambourine is a | b) exciting concert! |
| 3. What an | c) wind instrument. |
| 4. The violin is a | d) percussion instrument. |
| | e) very well. |

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)




s _ _ _ _ _ _


d _ _ _


s _ _ _ _ _ _

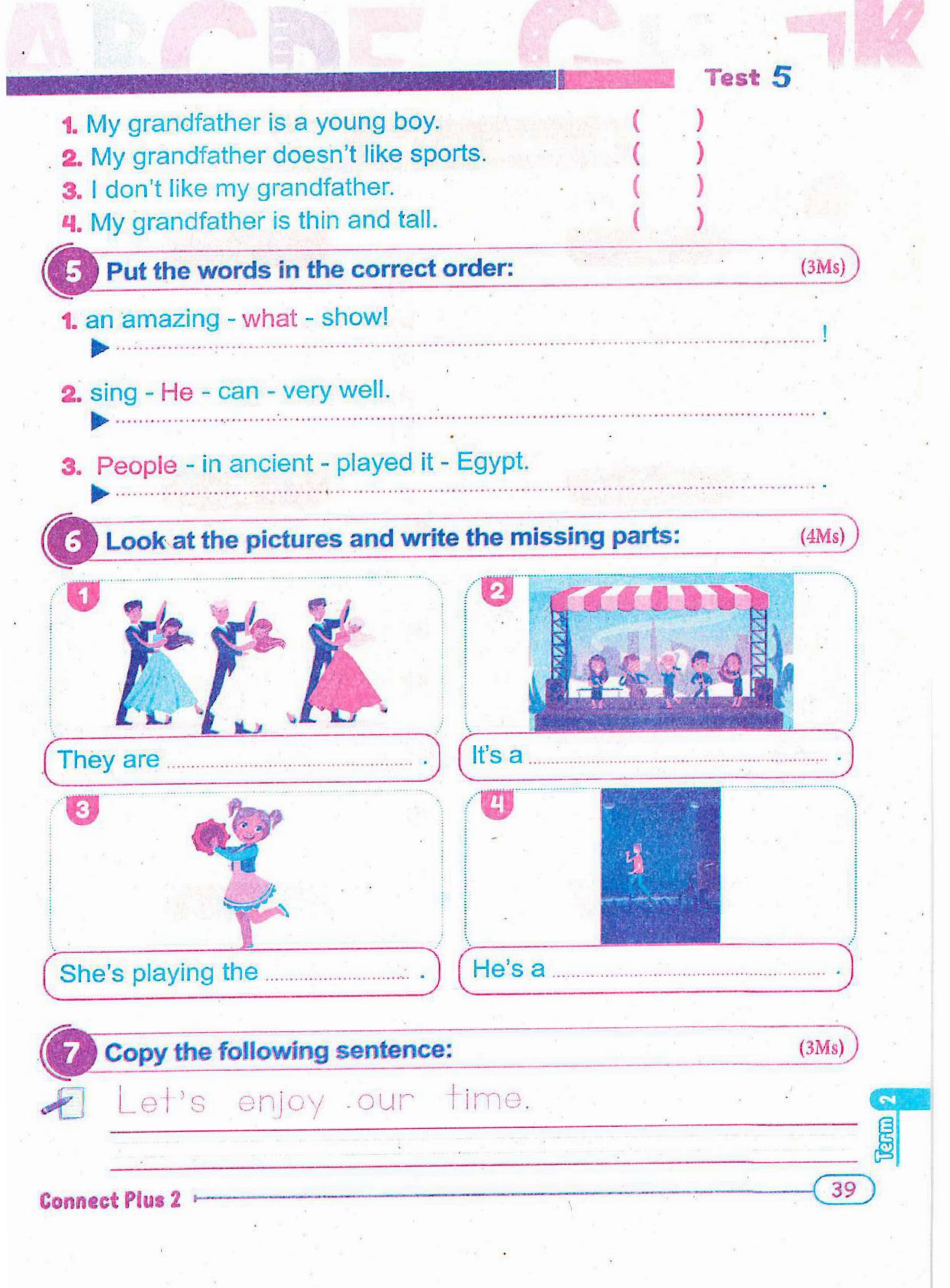

s _ _ _ _ _ _

### 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. They're playing (folk music - folk dance - folktale).
2. What (a - an - the) colorful costume!
3. He's singing a (music - sing - song).
4. Let's (asks - asking - ask) mom to make a cake.
5. The flute is a (wind - percussion - string) instrument.
6. She wants to (play - hit - kick) the piano.
7. (Where - Which - What) an interesting story!
8. They're telling a (folktale - folk music - folk dance).

### 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

My grandfather is 56 years old. He is thin and tall. He doesn't like music or singing. He likes reading, sports and watching TV. He always tells us stories. I like my grandfather very much.





1. My grandfather is a young boy. ( )
2. My grandfather doesn't like sports. ( )
3. I don't like my grandfather. ( )
4. My grandfather is thin and tall. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. an amazing - what - show!
   ▶ ........................................................................!
2. sing - He - can - very well.
   ▶ ........................................................................
3. People - in ancient - played it - Egypt.
   ▶ ........................................................................

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1. They are ................................ .
2. It's a ................................ .
3. She's playing the ......................... .
4. He's a ................................ .

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

Let's enjoy our time.

..............................................................................

## Revision on Unit 

 Match (A) with (B):

| 'A' | 'B' |
| --- | --- |
| 1. He helps all people. | a) you visit websites. |
| 2. Don't use a password | b) video chat. |
| 3. You are online when | c) He's very kind. |
| 4. Let's have a | d) feel dots and dashes. |
| | e) that people can guess. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
| --- | --- |
| 1. You use the World Wide Web when you want to. | a) type an email, write a project, watch a movie or look at photos. |
| 2. You use a laptop when you want to | b) watch a program or a movie. |
| 3. You use a television when you want to | c) see the person you are talking to. |
| 4. You use a telephone or cell phone when you want to | d) read websites or watch videos to find out information. |
| 5. You use a video chat when you want to | e) talk to one person and hear what they are saying. |

| 'A' | 'B' |
| --- | --- |
| 1. I want to learn more about plants. | a) No, I don't. |
| 2. Do you send postcards? | b) We are very excited. |
| 3. We have a school trip to Aswan. | c) Now, we're tired. |
| 4. Mona helps her friends at school. | d) She's very kind. |
| 5. I have a | e) I'm curious about the environment. |
| 6. We played volleyball after school. | f) cell phone. |

## 2 Put the words in the correct order to make sentences:

1. video chats - to have - didn't use - People.
▶ ................................................................ .

2. postcards - used - People - to write.
▶ ................................................................ .

3. didn't use - cell phones - to use - People.
▶ ................................................................ .

4. letters - People - to write - used.
▶ ................................................................ .

5. didn't use - telephones - People - to use.
▶ ................................................................ .

6. didn't use - People - text messages - to send.
▶ ................................................................ .

7. write - never - I - letters.
▶ ................................................................ .

8. Do - often - you - postcards - send?
▶ ................................................................ ?

9. having - video chats - like - Do you?
▶ ................................................................ ?

10. that - again - Say.
▶ ................................................................ .

11. do I - Yes, - So - now.
▶ ................................................................ .

12. online safety - What does - mean?
▶ ................................................................ ?

13. learned about - He - online safety.
▶ ................................................................ .

14. Reem - Who - messaging - is?
▶ ................................................................ ?

15. your password - Change - different - websites - on.
▶ ................................................................ .

16. You are - when you - online - visit - sites.

▶ ........................................................................................................

17. online - share - Don't - information.

▶ ........................................................................................................

## 3 Supply the missing letters:






## 4 Choose the correct answer:

1. They used to (writes - wrote - write) letters.
2. We did a lot of work on the project. We are (tired - kind - worried).
3. When you (text message - make a phone call - have a video chat), you can see the other person.
4. He's (bored - blind - blond). He can't see.

5. You type words to send a (picture message - text message - video chat).
6. My friend is very (worried - kind - angry). He helps me with my homework.
7. He (doesn't - didn't - isn't) use to play tennis.
8. She is (angry - interested - excited). Her laptop doesn't work.
9. (Ask - Asks - Don't ask) your parents before you go online.
10. It's a (loud - high - low) noise. It's not quiet.
11. You need a (password - postcard - email) to use some websites.
12. (Share - Shares - Don't share) information online with people you don't know.
13. They used to use (telephones - radios - typewriters) to write letters.
14. (Uses - Use - Don't use) a strong password.
15. It's quick and easy to make a (phone call - cell phone - telephone).
16. She (used - uses - use) to go to El Nasr School.
17. My brother is very (angry - curious - excited) about space. He wants to learn lots of things!
18. I didn't (uses - use - used) to send emails.
19. I'm (excited - kind - worried) because my friend isn't very happy.
20. My grandma (used to - didn't use to - use to) send emails when she was a girl.
21. (Send - Don't send - Sends) photos or tell people your address.
22. My grandpa (use to - used to - didn't use to) go online when he was a child.
23. I (didn't use to - use to - used to) write English when I was a baby.
24. (Change - Changes - Don't change) your password on different websites.
25. I (use to - used to - didn't use to) ride a bike when I was two.

## 5 Copy the following sentence:



Ask your parents before you go online.





## Unit 12 Test 6

### 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. Let's have a | a) He's angry. |
| 2. Fady lost his cell phone! | b) phone call. |
| 3. I want to make a | c) I'm worried about him. |
| 4. My friend isn't at school today. | d) video chat. |
| | e) No, I don't. |

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)









t _ _ _ _    t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _    l _ _ _ _ _    k _ _ _

### 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. I make lots of (video chats - letters - phone calls) every day.
2. I didn't (uses - use - used) to have a cell phone.
3. He (used - uses - use) to go to school by car.
4. She is very (worried - kind - angry). She helped me with my work.
5. It's a (loud - high - quiet) noise. It's not loud.
6. She (don't - didn't - isn't) use to draw pictures.
7. He's (bored - blind - blond). He can't see.
8. She used to (writes - wrote - write) her homework in the evening.

### 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

Yesterday, we were at the park. There was an angry boy in the park. His name is Omar. He was sad. There were two girls on the slide. We were happy, but my brother was tired.

## Test 6

1. Yesterday, we were at the park. (   )
2. There were two boys on the slide. (   )
3. My brother was tired. (   )
4. Omar was the angry boy. (   )

**5 Put the words in the correct order:** (3Ms)

1. Why - write - did you - letters?

▶ ............................................................ ?

2. sending - picture - I like - messages.

▶ ............................................................ .

3. make a phone - call - can - We.

▶ ............................................................ .

**6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts:** (4Ms)

1. I can send an .................................... .

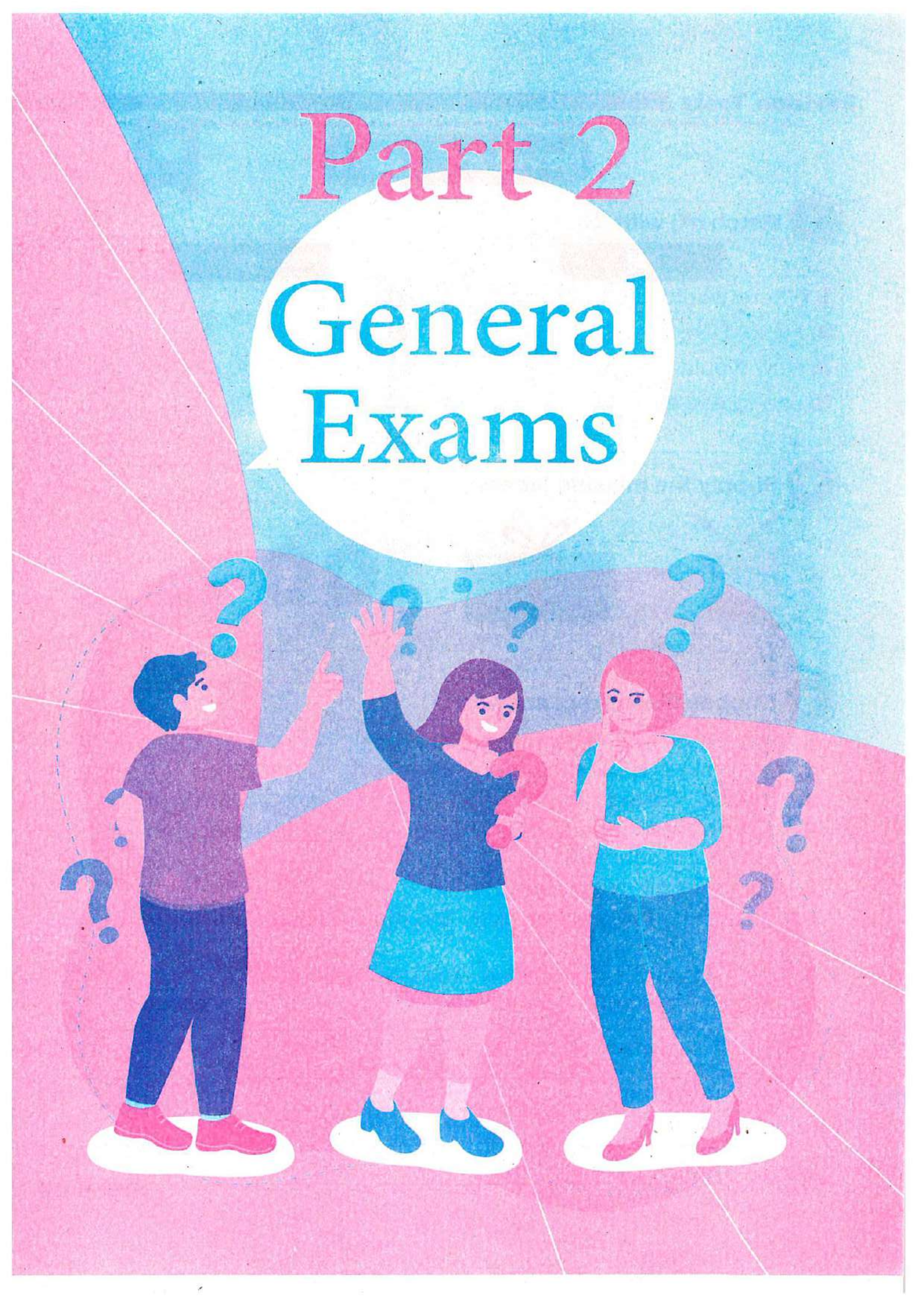
2. He's .................................... .

3. It's a .................................... .

4. It's a .................................... .

**7 Copy the following sentence:** (3Ms)

Say that again.


Part 2
General Exams

# Revision Test 1

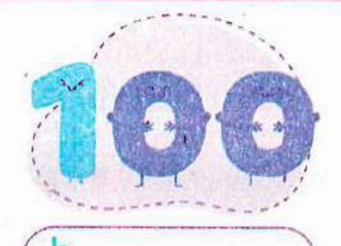
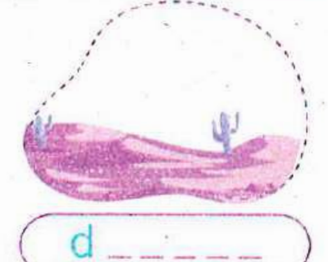



## 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. Where would you like to go? | a) railroad. |
| 2. I would like to | b) by boat. |
| 3. How would you go to Cairo? | c) I would like to go to Luxor. |
| 4. I go to Aswan | d) go to Port Said. |
| | e) By car. |

## 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)



d ___  p ______  h ______  d _____

## 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. I was thirsty, (so - but - because) I drank 2 bottles of water.
2. A ferry stops at a (station - port - airport).
3. I (had to - have to - don't have to) get up early yesterday.
4. The (national - traditional - popular) anthem is a song that the people of a country sing.
5. We get (eggs - wool - juice) from sheep.
6. Hippos run (the least quickly - the most quickly - less quickly) than giraffes.
7. They're telling a (folk dance - folktale - folk music).
8. (Send - Don't send - Sends) photos or tell people your address.

## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

My family and I have lots of hobbies. My father likes reading. My mother loves watching TV. I prefer drawing.

My sister enjoys playing tennis. My brother likes swimming.

1. My mother doesn't like watching TV. ( )
2. My brother likes swimming. ( )
3. I like drawing. ( )
4. My sister likes reading. ( )

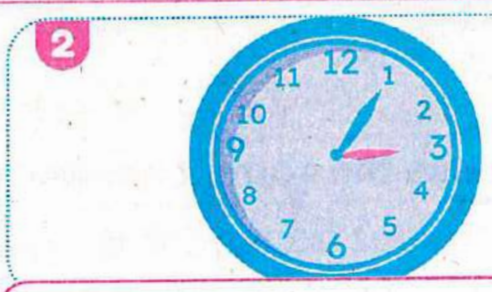
## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. performance - is - a lovely - This.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
2. is - Who - questions - asking?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?
3. An airplane - at - an airport - stops.
   ▶ ............................................................ .

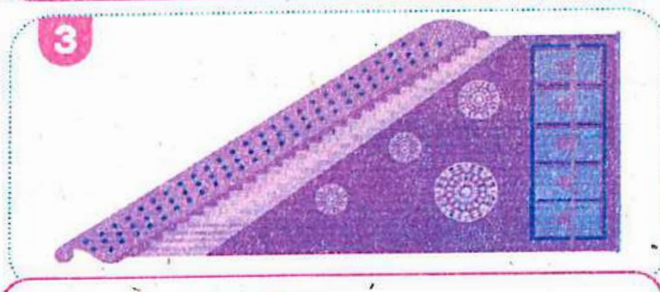
## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1 

There is an ............................ .

2 


It's ............................ .

3 

He's playing the ............................ .

4 


It's a ............................ .

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

 Our school is clean and beautiful.

............................................................

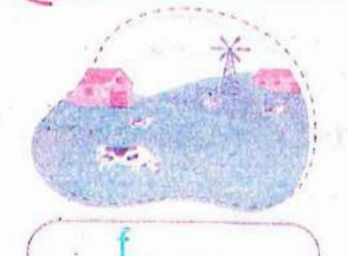
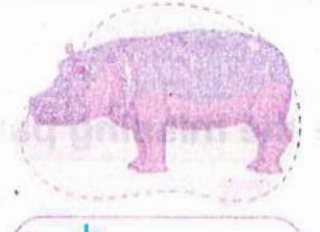
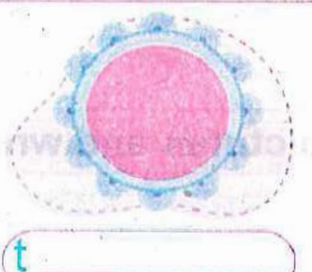
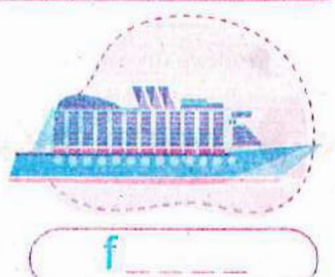
# Revision Test 2




## 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. You have to | a) clean the garden yesterday. |
| 2. I don't have to | b) You have to pick up trash. |
| 3. You had to | c) in the recycling bin. |
| 4. What do I have to do? | d) tidy your room today. |
| | e) get up early on the weekend. |

## 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)

f_ _ _   h_ _ _ _ _   t_ _ _ _ _ _ _ _   f_ _ _ _

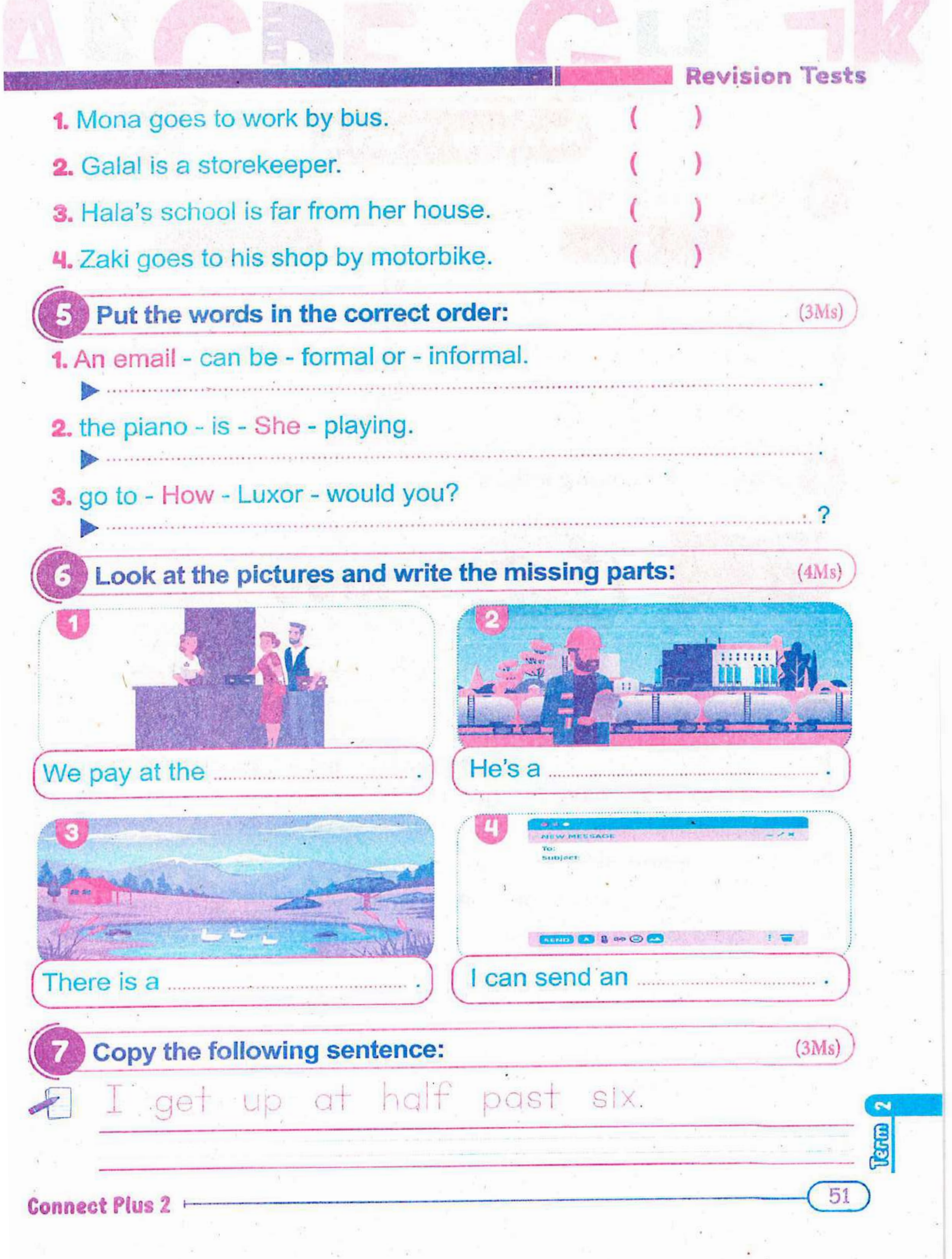
## 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. We get eggs from (rabbits - goats - chickens).
2. Four LE coins and a five LE note is (ten - nine - twenty) pounds.
3. She (dry - dries - drying) her hair.
4. I go to Aswan (by - in - on) airplane.
5. The giraffe is (taller - tall - the tallest) land animal.
6. The drum is a (wind - percussion - string) instrument.
7. (Where - Which - What) a colorful costume!
8. I'm (excited - kind - worried) because my sister is sick.

## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

Mona is a nurse. She goes to her hospital by bus. Zaki is a storekeeper. He goes to work by motorbike.
Galal is a waiter. He goes to work by car. Hala is a teacher. Her school is near her house. She goes to school on foot.





1. Mona goes to work by bus. ( )
2. Galal is a storekeeper. ( )
3. Hala's school is far from her house. ( )
4. Zaki goes to his shop by motorbike. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. An email - can be - formal or - informal.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
2. the piano - is - She - playing.
   ▶ ............................................................ .
3. go to - How - Luxor - would you?
   ▶ ............................................................ ?

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1. We pay at the ................................ .
2. He's a ................................ .
3. There is a ................................ .
4. I can send an ................................ .



## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

I get up at half past six.

..............................................................

..............................................................

## Revision Test 3




### 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. I went to the butcher's | a) Yes, they do. |
| 2. We didn't go to school yesterday | b) to buy some meat. |
| 3. He hates watching | c) No, I don't. |
| 4. Do you prefer cooking? | d) movies. |
| | e) because it was Friday. |

### 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)



l _ _ _ _ _ _



t _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _




t _ _ _ _ _ _ _



s _ _ _ _

### 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. The Mediterranean Sea is in the (east - north - south) of Egypt.
2. I (don't have to - have to - had to) go to school on holidays.
3. Here (am - is - are) an orange.
4. A (pilot - station master - railroad engineer) drives the train.
5. It can run (the least - more - less) quickly of them all.
6. She used to (writes - wrote - write) letters.
7. Do we get milk from cows? - Yes, we (are - do - don't).
8. They're performing a (dancer - dance - dancing).

### 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

All of us like the sun, the moon and the stars. We can see them in the sky. There is only one sun and one moon,

but there are a lot of stars. We see the sun in the morning. We see the moon at night.

1. There is only one star. ( )
2. We can see the moon at night. ( )
3. The stars are in the sky. ( )
4. We like the sun. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. My - isn't - big - family.
   ▶ ........................................................................?
2. A letter - usually - formal - is.
   ▶ ........................................................................
3. an amazing - What - show!
   ▶ ........................................................................!

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1. It's ................................................ .
2. It's a ................................................ .
3. He's a ................................................ .
4. It's ................................................ .

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

Children must drink milk.

........................................................................

Term 2

# Revision Test 4



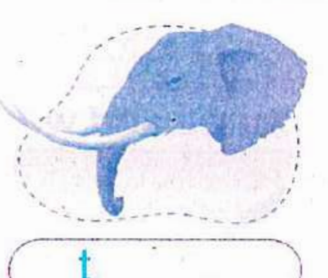



## 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. What do I have to do? | a) 3000 Egyptian pounds. |
| 2. The Nile crocodile is | b) very big mouth. |
| 3. The cell phone costs about | c) the biggest reptile. |
| 4. The hippo has a | d) the tallest animal. |
| | e) You have to pick up trash. |

## 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)






w _ _ _ _ e _ _ _ _ _ _ _ t _ _ _ _ p _ _ _ _ _ _ _ _

## 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. The (fish - chicken - rabbit) lives in water.
2. I'm buying juice (so - but - because) I'm thirsty.
3. The train leaves (in - at - on) five twenty.
4. There (am - is - are) plants and trees.
5. I (have to - don't have to - had to) save energy every day.
6. He's (bored - blind - blond). He can't see.
7. I (visit - visited - visits) my friend last week.
8. The guitar is a (wind - percussion - string) instrument.

## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

I get up at 7 o'clock. I wash my face and brush my teeth. Then I pray and have my breakfast with my mother.

Then I brush my hair and go to school. My mother always says, "You are a good boy, Ali".

1. Ali gets up at 7 o'clock. ( )
2. Ali prays in the morning. ( )
3. Ali's mother is happy with him. ( )
4. Ali has his breakfast at 6 o'clock. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. An email - can be - formal or - informal.
▶ ............................................................ .

2. are singing - The children - anthem - the national.
▶ ............................................................ .

3. On Eid Al-Fitr- We - wear - new clothes.
▶ ............................................................ .

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1. I want to make a ............................ .

2. It's ............................................ .

3. It's a ............................................ .

4. The ...... is in charge of the school.

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

I love my dad and mom.

______________________________

______________________________

# Revision Test 5




## 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. What time is it? | a) water. |
| 2. A train stops at | b) checks the engines. |
| 3. Boats travel in | c) It's four forty. |
| 4. A mechanic | d) a station. |
| | e) By taxi. |

## 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)








n ............ s ........ m ............ c ......

## 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. A flight attendant helps (pilots - co-pilots - passengers) on the plane.
2. Let's (asks - asking - ask) our teacher to play the piano.
3. We get (meat - wool - eggs) from cows.
4. She (draws - drew - draw) a picture last week.
5. He (don't - didn't - isn't) use to play tennis.
6. (Why - Who - What) do you cycle to school? - To keep fit.
7. Horses run (the most - the least - more) quickly than zebras.
8. He's singing a (singer - sing - song).

## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

Friday is a holiday. I like shopping. I go out with my sister to see the shops and buy some things. First,



we go to the supermarket and buy some fruit. Then, we go to the park and eat an ice cream. Finally, we come home at five o'clock.

1. We buy some vegetables and sweets. ( )
2. We go to the station. ( )
3. We come home at five o'clock. ( )
4. We go to the park. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. learn about - What - she - did?
   ▶ .................................................................................... ?
2. Change your - websites - on different - password.
   ▶ .................................................................................... .
3. to your - Talk - parents about - going online.
   ▶ .................................................................................... .

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1. A car stops at a ........................................ .
2. He's a ........................................ .
3. It's ........................................ .
4. It's a ........................................ .

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

We live in Egypt.

.................................................................................................

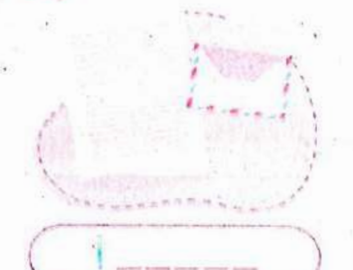
# Revision Test 6

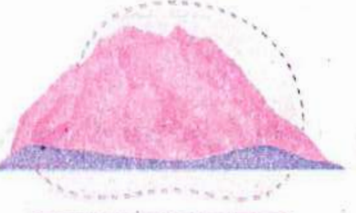



## 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. What's the weather like today? | a) deserts in Egypt. |
| 2. We recycle paper and plastic | b) It was sunny. |
| 3. There are | c) It's windy. |
| 4. Why do you cycle to school? | d) to look after the environment. |
| | e) To keep fit. |

## 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)






i _ _ _ _ _    t _ _ _ _    m _ _ _ _ _ _ _    t _ _ _ _

## 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. It's (cold - hot - warm) in winter.
2. The figs are (cheap - expensive - high). They aren't expensive.
3. (Passengers - Pilots - Ticket agents) get on and off a train at a station.
4. What (a - an - the) interesting story!
5. I (don't have to - have to - had to) go to school on holidays.
6. It's a (loud - high - low) noise. It's not quiet.
7. They used to (writes - wrote - write) letters.
8. (Where - How - What) would you go to Cairo? - By car.

## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

Ali and Heba are a brother and sister. They go to their grandpa's farm on Friday. He grows carrots, cucumbers and potatoes.

He keeps goats, cows and hens on the farm. He has got two cows and three goats. Ali and Heba help him on the farm.

1. Grandpa grows tomatoes and wheat. ( )
2. He has got three cows. ( )
3. Ali and Heba go to the farm on Wednesday. ( )
4. Grandpa has got hens and goats. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. in the past - letters - People - wrote.
   ▶ ..........................................................................................................
2. do you think - is - Why - important - it?
   ▶ ..........................................................................................................?
3. is - Who - questions - asking?
   ▶ ..........................................................................................................?

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1. She's playing the .......................... .
2. It's the .......................................... Nile.
3. Airplanes travel in the ...................... .
4. He's ................................................... .

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

Hippos have big mouths.

______________________________________________

______________________________________________

# Revision Test 7




## 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)

| 'A' | 'B' |
|---|---|
| 1. A police officer can help | a) my mom and dad. |
| 2. The reed pipe is a | b) string instrument. |
| 3. I live with | c) lovely concert. |
| 4. The qanun is a | d) in an emergency. |
| | e) wind instrument. |

## 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)






a ________ a _____ t ______ s ________

## 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. The (mechanic - conductor - ticket agent) fixes cars.
2. They're (eating - playing - wearing) costumes.
3. There is a (rivers - mountains - lake) in this city.
4. I went to the shoe store to buy shoes (but - and - so) boots.
5. People used to use (telephones - radios - typewriters) to write letters.
6. Trains travel on a (highway - railroad - water).
7. She prefers (make - making - makes) sandwiches.
8. We did a lot of work on the project. We are (tired - kind - worried).

## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

My dad is a doctor. He works in a hospital. He goes to work by car. He helps sick people.

He goes to work at nine o'clock every day. He likes his job. My mom is a teacher. She works in a school.

1. My dad doesn't like his job. ( )
2. My mom is a doctor. ( )
3. Dad goes to work by bus. ( )
4. My dad works in a hospital. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. People - ancient Egypt - played it - in.
   ▶ .................................................................
2. the piano - is - She - playing.
   ▶ .................................................................
3. instrument - What - do you like - best?
   ▶ .................................................................?

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1. He's ........................................ .
2. There's a ........................................ .
3. He's playing the ........................................ .
4. It's ........................................ .

## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)

Enjoy your time.

Term 2







# Revision Test 8

Total ___ / 30



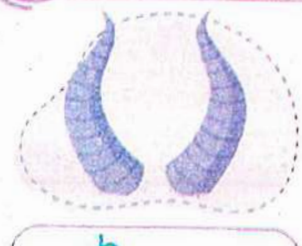
## 1 Match (A) with (B): (4Ms)



| 'A' | 'B' |
| --- | --- |
| 1. What an | a) that people can guess. |
| 2. He helps all people. | b) percussion instrument. |
| 3. Don't use a password | c) amazing show! |
| 4. The drum is a | d) feel dots and dashes. |
| | e) He's very kind. |

## 2 Supply the missing letters: (4Ms)





h ___



p _____




b ______



e _______

## 3 Choose the correct answer: (8Ms)

1. (Trains - Airplanes - Boats) are the fastest way to travel.
2. Do you enjoy (watch - to watch - watching) TV?
3. A (conductor - railroad engineer - station master) drives the train.
4. (Which - What - Why) is the weather like?
5. She (used - uses - use) to go to El Nasr School.
6. He wants his friend to (play - hit - kick) the flute.
7. They went to the butcher's, (but - so - because) it was closed.
8. She is (angry - interested - excited). Her laptop doesn't work.

## 4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗): (4Ms)

Soha lives in a big house with her father and mother. Her father works at a store. He is a storekeeper.



Her mother works in a hospital. She is a nurse. Soha goes to school at eight. Her school is next to the house.

1. Soha lives in a small house. ( )
2. Her mother is a teacher. ( )
3. Her father is a storekeeper. ( )
4. She goes to school at 8 o'clock. ( )

## 5 Put the words in the correct order: (3Ms)

1. are singing - The children - anthem - the national.
   ▶ ..................................................................................................
2. brother - I went - with my - shopping.
   ▶ ..................................................................................................
3. go to - How - Luxor - would you?
   ▶ ..................................................................................................?

## 6 Look at the pictures and write the missing parts: (4Ms)

1. They sell .................. in Damietta.
2. Doctors help ...................... people.
3. Let's have a ............................ .
4. She's playing the ........................ .



## 7 Copy the following sentence: (3Ms)









# The Set Book

## Unit (7)

### Lessons (1-2)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) from cows. 2) No, we didn't.
3) trip yesterday. 4) Yes, we do.

**2 Mark (✓) the correct answer:**
1) (✓) 2) (×) 3) (×) 4) (✓)

**3 Supply the missing letters:**
farm – animals – horse / donkey – cow – sheep / goat – fish – duck / chicken – rabbit – wool / milk – eggs – meat

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1) cows 2) chickens 3) sheep
4) duck 5) wool 6) rabbit 7) eggs
8) cow 9) milk 10) fish 11- meat

**5 Choose the correct answer:**
1) went 2) Did 3) saw
4) didn't 5) learned 6) Do 7) do

**6 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (✓) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**7 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) We went on a school trip yesterday.
2) Did you go to a museum?
3) We get eggs from chickens.
4) Do we get wool from sheep?
5) We went to the farm to see animals.

**8 Look at the pictures and write:**
1) eggs 2) duck 3) milk 4) rabbit
5) horse 6) meat

### Lesson (3)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) To keep our house tidy.
2) to look after the environment.
3) To keep fit.
4) to learn about the world.

**2 Mark (✓) the correct answer:**
1) (×) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)
5) (✓) 6) (✓)

**3 Supply the missing letters:**
beach – oasis – desert / park – restaurant – farm / library – sports center – supermarket

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1) Why 2) to 3) to 4) Why 5) To
6) keep 7) visit 8) learn 9) play
10) look after 11) go 12) have

**5 Read and complete as examples:**
2) to learn about animals.
3) to visit the museum. 4) to have lunch.
5) to go swimming. 6) to see the oasis.

**6 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) We do exercise to get fit.
2) We recycle plastic to look after the environment.
3) We go to the supermarket to buy food.
4) We visit the library to read books.

**7 Punctuate the following sentences:**
1) Why do we go to Alexandria?
2) I went to the beach to go swimming.
3) We went to Cairo to visit the museum.

### Lesson (4)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) in Egypt. 2) a mountain.
3) the east. 4) oases in the desert.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
1) desert 2) mountain 3) farmhouse
4) lake 5) oasis 6) pyramids
7) temple 8) sea 9) river
10) city 11) north 12) south
13) map 14) east 15) west

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) is 2) are 3) north 4) mountain
5) lakes 6) east 7) are 8) is

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (✓) 2) (✓) 3) (×)
4) (×) 5) (✓) 6) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) There are mountains in Egypt.
2) Egypt is next to the sea.
3) There are oases in the desert.
4) There is farmland around the River Nile.

## Lesson (5)

**1 Complete the sentences:**
1) delta 2) farmland
3) oasis 4) grow - keep
5) peninsula 6) mountain range 7) dam

**2 Read and choose (A) or (B):**
1) the Nile enters the sea.
2) farming 3) rice

**3 Read and choose (A) or (B):**
1) oases 2) water, trees and plants
3) dates, figs, olives and grapes.

**4 Read and choose (A) or (B):**
1) a) water around most of it.
2) b) Red Sea

**5 Read and choose (A) or (B):**
1) 48 years old 2) the Nile River

**6 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) Farmers grow rice and wheat.
2) The desert is hot and empty.
3) An oasis is a place in the desert.
4) The High Dam is very big.

**7 Punctuate the following sentences:**
1) The Nile Delta is an area in Egypt.
2) The Red Sea is in the east.
3) People built the High Dam to control the Nile River.

## Lessons (6-7)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) It's foggy. 2) in winter.
3) It was windy. 4) in summer

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
hot – windy – sunny / cloudy – rainy – cold
snowing – thunder – lightning /
foggy – drought – flood

**3 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (✓) 3) (×) 4) (✓)

**4 Complete the sentences:**
1) Warm weather 2) no rain
3) sun 4) partly sunny

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) What was the weather like yesterday?
2) It is sunny in Giza.
3) Warm weather is good for farming.
4) It was foggy yesterday.

**6 Look at the picture and write:**
1) sunny 2) rainy 3) cold
4) foggy 5) windy 6) thunder
7) snowing 8) drought 9) hot
10) lightning 11) foggy 12) flood

## Lesson (8)

**1 Supply the missing letters:**
basket – leaves – furniture
/ carpet – glass – sand

**2 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**3 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (✓) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (✓) 3) (✓) 4) (×)

**5 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (✓) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**6 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) Nubia is famous for making baskets.
2) What animals can we get wool from?
3) Al-Fayoum is a city in Egypt.
4) People can learn to weave carpets.

**7 Punctuate the following sentences:**
1) There are lots of schools in Giza.
2) In Damietta, people make furniture.
3) Al-Fayoum is a city in Egypt.

## Lessons (9-10)

**1 Complete the words with (cl - fl - pl):**
flute – clock – plants / plane – flag – cloud
clown – plate – clay / clap – flood – planet

**2 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (✓) 3) (×) 4) (×)

**3 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (×)

Term 2

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (✓) 3) (×) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) What is your favorite product?
2) Can you make any traditional products?
3) This rug is from Giza.
4) You can paint it in different colors.

**6 Punctuate the following sentences:**
1) This chair is from Damietta.
2) What does Nadia put in her basket?
3) These glasses are from Cairo.

## Lessons (11-12)

**1 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (✓) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**2 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) How far is it from Cairo to Alexandria?
2) Sometimes we go by car.
3) I like to visit different places.

**3 Punctuate the following sentences:**
1) I live in Cairo with my family.
2) How far is it from Cairo to Luxor?
3) We like to travel to different places in Egypt?

## Unit (7) Test (1)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) To keep our house tidy. 2) No, we don't.
3) It was cool. 4) in the desert.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
chicken – windy – mountain – meat

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) do 2) are 3) Why 4) cold
5) lake 6) What 7) closer 8) to

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (×)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) What is the weather like today?
2) The Red Sea is in the East.
3) How do you make glass from sand?

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
sunny – milk / pyramids – furniture

# Unit (8)

## Lessons (1-2)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) I would like to go to Luxor.
2) go to Port Said.
3) By car. 4) by boat.

**2 Match "A" with "B":**
1) an airport. 2) a gas station.
3) a station. 4) a port.

**3 Match "A" with "B":**
1) a railroad. 2) a highway.
3) water. 4) the sky.

**4 Supply the missing letters:**
airport – gas station – café / supermarket – library – port / station – restaurant – store / museum – railroad – highway / water – sky – airplane / train – boat – ferry / car – taxi

**5 Choose the correct answer:**
1) by 2) port 3) railroad 4) Where
5) gas station 6) sky 7) by 8) station
9) highway 10) How 11) airport 12) water

**6 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**7 Read and complete:**
1) gas station 2) port 3) railroad
4) airport 5) station 6) highway

**8 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) Where would you like to go?
2) I would like to go to Aswan.
3) How would you go to Cairo?
4) I go to Port Said by ferry.

**9 Punctuate the following sentences:**
1) Would you like to go to Luxor?
2) I would like to go to Alexandria, please.
3) Where would you like to go?
4) Zeiad would like to go to Cairo.

**7 Look at the pictures and write:**
station – airport / port – gas station / railroad – highway / sky – water

## Lesson (3)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) flies a plane. 2) helps people at the station.
3) checks the passengers' tickets.
4) sells tickets.

**2 Match "A" with "B":**
1) checks the engines. 2) drives the train.
3) helps the pilot.
4) help the passengers on a plane.

**3 Match "A" with "B":**
1) the times of the trains.
2) in charge of the station.
3) get on and off a train. 4) timetable.

**4 Supply the missing letters:**
station master – pilot – passengers /
mechanic – schedule – railroad engineer /
co-pilot – conductor – ticket agent /
flight attendant – engine – fix

**5 Choose the correct answer:**
1) pilot 2) ticket agent 3) conductor
4) Passengers 5) mechanic 6) co-pilot
7) schedule 8) station master
9) flight attendant 10) railroad engineer

**6 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (✓) 2) (×) 3) (×) 4) (✓)

**7 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) A train travels on a railroad.
2) A pilot flies a plane.
3) Train times are on a schedule.
4) A ticket agent sells tickets.

## Lessons (4-5)

**1 Supply the missing letters:**
platform – ticket – pound

**2 Read and write the letter:**
1) B 2) D 3) A 4) F 5) C 6) E

**3 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) How many people are traveling?
2) We would like to go to Giza.
3) Where is platform 4?
4) This is the adult ticket.

**4 Punctuate the following:**
1) Which platform do we need to go to?
2) Dad and Youssef are traveling to Giza.
3) Is Laila buying three ticket?

## Lessons (6-7)

**1 Read and complete the text:**
1) hours 2) minutes 3) hand

**2 What time is it?**
1) It's twelve o'clock. 2) It's one ten.
3) It's half past eleven. 4) It's eleven thirty.
5) It's eight twenty-five.
6) It's quarter past three.
7) It's three fifteen. 8) It's six forty-five.
9) It's nine twenty.
10) It's seven twenty-five.
11) It's two fifty-five. 12) It's five o'clock.

**3 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) It's six twenty-five. 2) What time is it now?
3) Salwa travels from Aswan to Luxor.
It's half past two.

**4 Punctuate the following:**
1) Faisal travels from Aswan to Cairo.
2) What time does Heba go home?
3) Dina wants to travel from Alexandria to Giza.

## Lessons (8-9-10)

**1 Read and complete:**
- next to - across from. - Turn left.
- between - Turn right - Go straight

**2 Read and complete the dialogue:**
1) go 2) straight 3) next 4) across

**3 Read and complete the dialogue:**
1) Where 2) left 3) between

**4 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) The office is across from the hotel.
2) We always go to the beach.
3) Where is the hospital?
The supermarket is next to the café.

## Lesson (11)

**1 Complete the words with (tr - fr - pr):**
1) Fred 2) frog 3) truck
4) present 5) press 6) train

**5 Read and complete the sentences:**
1) frog -truck 2) Fred – present

## Unit (8) Test (2)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) It's opposite the school.
2) It's ten twenty-five.
3) I need my school bag.
4) I would like to go to the park.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
airport – schedule – platform – engine

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) port 2) by 3) railroad engineer 4) at
5) passengers 6) How 7) mechanic 8)Airplanes

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) Can I help you?
2) A railroad engineer drives the train.
3) What time do you start school?

**5 Look at the pictures and write:**
twelve twenty-five – gas station /
ticket agent – six o'clock

# Unit (9)

## Lesson (1)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) do my homework today.
2) a picture of a hippo last week.
3) go to the shops yesterday.
4) a picture of a lion today.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
elephant – hippo – lion /
giraffe – rhino – horse

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1- wrote 2- had to 3- have to
4- have to 5- went 6- visited
7- write 8- did 9- go 10- have to

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1- elephant 2- giraffe 3- hippo 4- rhino

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) I have to do my homework.
2) I like giraffes best.
3) An elephant has two big ears.
4) I had to tidy my books.
5) A giraffe has a long neck.

## Lessons (2-3-4)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) horns on its nose. 2) the tallest animal.
3) very big mouth. 4)the biggest land animal.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
legs – trunk – tusks / horn – tongue –
mouth / teeth – nose – lion

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) faster 2) tallest 3) more quickly
4) less quickly 5) the biggest
6) the most quickly 7) the least quickly
8) stronger

**4 Read and complete the text:**
1) mouth 2) tusks 3) trunk
4) neck 5) horns

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) Giraffes run more quickly than hippos.
2) Rhinos run less quickly than hippos.
3) Elephants run less quickly than giraffes.

**6 Read, then answer the questions:**
1) A vet.
2) Because she thinks they are cute.
3) Because they can run faster than rhinos and they are very heavy. 4) Hippos live near lakes and rivers in Africa.
5) They like swimming and eating plants.
6) 100 hippos.

## Lessons (5-6-7)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) 1000 Egyptian pounds.
2) next to the River Nile.
3) the biggest reptile.
4) food and water.

**2 Match "A" with "B":**
1) 100,000 2) 4000,000 3) 200 4) 8000

**3 Read and complete:**
1) population 2) dams 3) energy
4) electricity 5) clean 6) dirty

**4 Write in digits:**
1) 150 2) 600 3) 7300 4) 9.000,000

5) 17.000,000 6) 3000 7) 24.000
8) 30.000 9) 500,000 10) 400

**5 Write the following numbers:**
1) a hundred ninety
2) eight hundred eighty
3) two million eight hundred thousand
4) twelve million
5) nine thousand 6) three hundred twenty
7) four hundred forty 8) thirty thousand
9) seventy-seven thousand
10) eleven million

**6 Read and complete:**
1) population 2) food 3) clean
4) dirty 5) dams 6) energy 7) electricity

## Lessons (8-9-10)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) tidy your room today.
2) get up early on the weekend.
3) clean the garden yesterday.
4) You have to pick up trash.

**2 Match "A" with "B":**
1) You have to do your school project.
2) You have to go to school.
3) You have to see your teacher.

**3 Read and complete:**
1) Walk 2) shower 3) water
4) lights 5) bottles 6) country

**4 Read and complete:**
1) have to 2) don't have to
3) have to 4) don't have to
5) don't have to 6) have to

**5 Read and complete:**
1) have to 2) had to 3) have to
4) don't have to 5) had to
6) don't have to

**6 Supply the missing letters:**
water – shower – bath / walk – drive – lamp / throw – recycle – trash can / garden – litter – bottle

**7 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) I pick up litter. 2) We plant trees.
3) I clean the river.
4) We clean the beach.
5) I recycle plastic bottles.

## Lessons (11-12)

**1 Complete the words:**
1) cries 2) cry 3) tries 4) try 5) fries 6) fry

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
1) weaving 2) carpets 3) fly
4) cry 5) dry 6) fry

**3 Read and complete:**
1) Weaving 2) carpets 3) colors
4) pictures 5) animals

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1) fries 2) cries 3) fly 4) try 5) dries
6) fries 7) flies 8) cry 9) tries 10) fry

**5 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):**
1) (✓) 2) (✗) 3) (✓) 4) (✗)

## Unit (9) Test (3)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) You have to pick up trash.
2) tidy your bedroom yesterday.
3) go to the doctor. I'm not ill.
4) help mom at home today.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
rhino – river – thousand – carpet

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) more 2) cries 3) had to
4) the tallest 5) the least 6) have to
7) drew 8) don't have to

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):**
1) (✗) 2) (✗) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) We have to keep our rivers clean.
2) Which animal do you like best?
3) Horses run more quickly than elephants.

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
lights – Weaving / trunk – recycle

# Unit (10)

## Lessons (1-2-3)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**

## Answer Key

1) so I ate some bread and cheese.
2) because it was Saturday.
3) and magazines.
4) but she doesn't like playing basketball.

**2 Match "A" with "B":**
1) to music 2) television 3) ice cream
4) by bus 5) English 6) sport

**3 Supply the missing letters:**
shopping – supermarket – market / store – clothes store – shoe store / bookstore – bakery – butcher's / cheap – expensive – checkout

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1) shopping 2) because 3) listening
4) so 5) cheap 6) traveling 7) but
8) making 9) and 10) expensive
11) drinking 12) but

**5 Read and complete:**
1) and 2) so 3) because 4) but

**6 Read and complete:**
1) drinking 2) shopping 3) doing
4) reading 5) making 6) visiting

**7 Read and choose:**
1) because 2) so 3) and 4) but

**8 Look at the pictures and write:**
1- check out 2- shopping 3- expensive

### Lessons (4-5)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) it cost? 2) is twenty-three
3) It is 17 pounds. 4) is forty.

**2 Match "A" with "B":**
1) 21 2) 40 3) 46 4) 13 5) 65
6) 21 7) 84 8) 62 9) 115 10) 6

**3 look and answer:**
1) 19 LE / 1 LE 2) 30 LE / 20 LE
3) 64 LE / 36 LE

**4 Look and circle:**
1) addition 2) subtraction

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) How much is this rice?
2) Eighteen plus five is twenty-three.
3) How much change do you get?
4) Fifty minus five is forty-five.

### Lessons (6-7)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) do they need to buy?
2) any grapes. 3) Yes, that's a good idea.
4) some apple juice.

**2 Read and complete the dialogue:**
1) bread 2) onions 3) butter
4) 39L.E. 5) 11L.E.

**3 Supply the missing letters:**
1) grapes 2) pears 3) bananas
4) orange juice 5) milk 6) melon
7) yogurt 8) potatoes 9) chicken
10) rice 11) bread 12) cucumbers
13) figs 14) butter 15) onions
16) cheese 17) apples 18) tomatoes

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1) some 2) any 3) some
4) anything 5) any 6) some

**5 Punctuate the following:**
1) Does Mazen want to make a fruit salad?
2) Miss Dina would like some bread.
3) What does Nada need?

### Lessons (8-9)

**1 Supply the missing letters:**
letter – envelop – stamp /
email – address paper

**2 Read and complete:**
1) formal 2) computer 3) email address
4) press

**3 Read, complete and answer:**
1) a letter 2) yours sincerely
3) hi 4) Bye

**4 Read the letter and answer:**
1) Mr Gamal 2) Wael Habib
3) To thank Mr Gamal for letting them come to the store. 4) formal

**4 Read the email and answer:**
1) Sara 2) Nesma
3) To invite her friend Sara. 4) informal.

### Lessons (10-11)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) on the weekend. 2) at the hospital.
3) my mom and dad. 4) in an emergency.

**2 complete the words:**
1) ear 2) hair 3 )chair 4) beard

**3 Supply the missing letters:**
Firefighter – nurse – storekeeper /
doctor – waiter – principal /
chef – teacher – police officer

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1) firefighters 2) teachers 3) nurses
4) sellers 5) chefs 6) principal 7) Waiters

**5 Read and mark (✓) or (X):**
1) (✓) 2) (✓) 3) (X) 4) (✓)

## Unit (10) Test (4)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) I went shopping. 2) No, I don't.
3) buy some milk. 4) to buy some bread.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
money – recipe – envelope – storekeeper

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) and 2) watching 3) but 4) drinking
5) so 6) any 7) went 8) because

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) What did you do yesterday?
2) I have a recipe.
3) How much does it cost?

**5 Look at the pictures and write:**
expensive – sick / principal – rice

## Unit (11)

### Lessons (1-8-9)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) string instrument.
2) percussion instrument
3) amazing show! 4) wind instrument.

**2 Read and complete the text:**
1) band 2) musicians 3) singer

**3 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (✓) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**4 Read and complete the sentences:**
1) percussion 2) wind 3) percussion 4) string

**5 Look and write the missing parts:**
1) guitar 2) piano 3) flute 4) qanun
5) drums 6) reed pipe 7) oud
8) violin 9) bagpipe 10) tambourine
11) cymbals 12) singer

### Lesson (2)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) the national anthem.
2) beautiful costumes.
3) a traditional show. 4) playing folk music.

**2 Choose the correct answer:**
1) song 2) wearing 3) folktale 4) dance
5) dancer 6) folk music 7) instruments

**3 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (✓) 2) (✓) 3) (×) 4) (×)

**4 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) They are singing traditional songs.
2) The dancers hold a stick.
3) There are many folktales in Egypt.
4) This music is very old.

**5 Read, guess and write:**
1) assaya 2) anthem 3) folktales

### Lessons (3-4-5)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) "Nesma, can you play the guitar, please?"
2) "Dad, can you sing a song, please?"
3) "Can you tidy the classroom, please?'
4) "Fares, can you be in our show, please?"

**2 Complete the words:**
1) string 2) strong 3) instrument
4) spring 5) sprint

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) Yes, I love it, too.



2) Yes, it looks beautiful.
3) Yes, I love funny movies.

**4 Read and complete the sentences:**

1) us 2) ask 3) Let's 4) want 5) to

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**

1) We want the dancers to dance for us.
2) Faisal wants to play the guitar.
3) Mom wants me to tidy my room.
4) Let's ask Grandma to make a cake.
5) I want my brother to play football with me.
6) Let's ask Dad to read us a story.

**6 Complete the sentences:**

1) to sing 2) to play 3) to take
4) to tidy 5) to read 6) to help

## Lessons (6-7)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**

1) b) a special meal. 2) d) new clothes
3) a) family and friends 4) presents

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

celebrate – decorate – picnic /
present – mosque – meal / park – clothes – dye

**3 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**

1) (✓) 2) (×) 3) (×) 4) (×)

**4 Read and complete the sentences:**

1) park 2) clothes 3) presents
4) musicians 5) traditional music

**5 Choose the correct answer:**

1) in spring 2) They decorate eggs.
3) They paint them different colors.
4) Outside 5) Montaza Palace gardens

## Lessons (10-11)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**

1) From the northern coast.
2) folk music called Saidi.
3) There is traditional Nubian music.
4)The western desert.

**2 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**

1) (✓) 2) (✓) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**3 Put the words in the correct order:**

1) Musician in Upper Egypt play folk music.
2) Where can you hear Nubian music?
3)Sawahili music has a lot of string instrument.

**4 Punctuate the following:**

1) Aswan is in the south of Egypt.
2) There are many types of music in Egypt.
3) Lots of people live in Cairo.
4) The Red Sea is in the east of Egypt.

**5 Read and answer the questions:**

1) Upper Egypt 2) The Red Sea
3) Lower Egypt 4) The Mediterranean Sea
5) North 6) South

## Unit (11) Test (5)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**

1) percussion instrument.
2) wind instrument.
3) music best. 4) string instrument.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

Egypt – violin – presents – spring

**3 Choose the correct answer:**

1) ask 2) an 3) wearing 4) play
5) folktale 6) wind 7) national 8) What

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**

1) (×) 2) (✓) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**

1) What is your favorite instrument?
2) We can play instruments in different ways.
3) How do you celebrate Sham El-Nessim?

**5 Look at the pictures and write:**

dancers (dancing) – band (concert) / boat – singer

# Unit (12)

## Lessons (1-9)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**

1) video chat. 2) No, I don't.
3) a phone call. 4) cell phone.

**2 Match "A" with "B":**

1) talk to one person and hear what they are saying.

2) see the person you are talking to.
3) watch a program or a movie.
4) read websites or watch videos to find out information. 5) type an email, write a project, watch a movie, or look at photos.

**3 Supply the missing letters:**
phone call – text message – video call / picture message – telephone – cell phone / letter – postcard – email / magazine – newspaper – website

**4 Read and circle:**
1) have a video chat 2) text message
3) password 4) phone call

**5 Read and circle T (true) F (false):**
1) F 2) T 3) F 4) T 5) F

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
1- video chat 2- picture message
3- letter 4- email

## Lessons (2-3)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) about going online
2) that people can guess
3) photos with people you don't know.
4) password on different websites.

**2 Choose the correct answer:**
1) Ask 2) Don't share 3) Use
4) Change 5) Don't send

**3 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (✓) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

## Lessons (4-5)

**1 Supply the missing letters:**
1) typewriter 2) laptop 3) telephone
4) radio 5) television 6) cell phone
7) computer 8) wire 9) telegraph

**2 Complete the sentences:**
1) didn't use to 2) didn't use to
3) didn't use to 4) didn't use to
5) used to 6) didn't use to

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) used 2) didn't 3) use
4) didn't use 5) use 6) do

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1) didn't use to 2) didn't use to
3) didn't use to 4) didn't use to
5) used to 6) didn't use to

**5 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**6 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) People didn't use to send text messages.
2) People didn't use to use telephones.
3) People used to write letters.
4) People didn't use to use cell phones.
5) People used to write post cards.
6) People didn't use to have video chats.

## Lessons (6-7)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) He's very kind. 2) He's angry.
3) I'm worried about him.
4) I'm curious about the environment.
5) We're very excited. 6) Now, we're tired.

**2 Choose the correct answer:**
1) tired 2) kind 3) angry
4) curious 5) worried

**3 Supply the missing letters:**
excited - tired - bored / kind - worried - angry

**4 Complete the following:**
thumb – wrist – knit / write – knot – lamb

**5 Read and complete the sentences:**
1) interested 2) curious 3) bored
4) kind 5) angry 6) worried
7) tired 8) excited

## Lesson (8)

**1 Supply the missing letters:**
blind - accident - dots / fingers - dashes - touch

**2 Read and circle:**
1) Yes 2) No 3) Yes 4) No 5) No

**3 Punctuate the following:**
1) It's a story about a young boy called Louis Braille.
2) Where did he learn?
3) Lousi went to a special school in Paris.

## Lessons (10-11)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) block light 2) in straight lines.

3) reflect light 4) transparent objects

**2 Look and write:**
1) reflect 2) block 3) pass
4) block 5) reflect 6) block

**3 Look and write:**
1) a 2) b 3) b 4) a 5) a 6) a

## Unit (12) Test (6)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) you visit websites. 2) video chat.
3) He's very kind.
4) that people can guess.

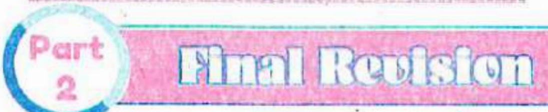
**2 Supply the missing letters:**
angry – cell phone – postcard – thumb

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) write 2) blind 3) didn't 4) loud
5)typewriters 6) used 7) use 8)phone calls

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (×) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) Do you watch movies on a television?
2) Louis went to a school for blind children.
3) What does online safety mean?

**5 Look at the pictures and write:**
formal – tired / letters – television



# Part 2 Final Revision

## Revision on Unit 7

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) To keep fit. 2) No, we don't.
3) to learn about the world.
4) oases in the desert.

**- Match "A" with "B":**
1) to look after the environment.
2) No, we didn't.
3) school trip yesterday. 4) Yes, we do.

**- Match "A" with "B":**
1) in Egypt. 2) a lake.
3) To keep fit. 4) deserts in Egypt.

**- Match "A" with "B":**
1) It's windy. 2) in winter.
3) It was sunny. 4) in summer.

**2 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) We went on a school trip yesterday.
2) Did you go to a museum?
3) We went to a farm to learn about animals. 4) That sounds fun.
5) We learned about animal products.
6) We went to a farm to see animals.
7) It has wings, feathers and a beak.
8) It has four legs. 9 ) It lives in water.
10) Do we get milk from ducks?
11) We get wool from sheep.
12) We get eggs from chicken.
13) The horse is a big animal.
14) Why do we tidy up?
15) We go to school to learn.
16) Why do we exercise?
17) We tidy up our house to keep tidy.

**3 Supply the missing letters:**
desert – mountain – farmland / farm – animals – horse / lake – oasis – pyramids / donkey – cow – sheep / temple – sea – river / goat – fish – duck / city – north – south / east – west – map / chicken – rabbit – wool / milk – eggs – meat / hot – windy – sunny / cloudy – rainy – cold / snowing – thunder – lightning / flood – drought – foggy

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1) wool 2) are 3) Why
4) Do 5) are 6) closer
7) temple 8) chickens 9) mountain
10) to 11) lakes 12) cold 13) east
14) Why 15) cheese 16) meat
17) hot 18) To 19) fish 20) is

## Unit (7) Test (1)

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1) To keep our house tidy. 2) the east.
3) It's cool. 4) from sheep.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
rabbit – windy – south – mountain

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) Why 2) is 3) duck 4) What
5) to 6) are 7) do 8) north

4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):
1) (✓) 2) (✗) 3) (✗) 4) (✗)

5 Put the words in the correct order:
1) We saw horses and cows.
2) Did you go to a museum?
3) We learned about animal products.

6 Look at the pictures and write:
pyramids – eggs / thunder – desert

## Revision on Unit 8

1 Match "A" with "B":
1) I would like to go to the hospital.
2) I need my school bag.
3) It's seven forty-five.
4) It's opposite the school.

- Match "A" with "B":
1) a port. 2) a station.
3) a gas station. 4) an airport.

- Match "A" with "B":
1) the sky. 2) water.
3) a highway. 4) a railroad.

- Match "A" with "B":
1) checks the engines.
2) helps people at the station.
3) checks the passengers' tickets.
4) help the passengers.

- Match "A" with "B":
1) flies a plane. 2) drives the train.
3) helps the pilot. 4) sells tickets.

- Match "A" with "B":
1) timetable. 2) get on and off a train.
3) in charge of the station.
4) the times of the trains.

2 Put the words in the correct order:
1) There are twelve hours on the clock.
2) An hour has 60 minutes.
3) It's quarter past two.
4) What time is it now?
5) Dad and Yousef are traveling to Giza.
6) Which platform do we need to go to?
7) Can I buy a ticket here?
8) Where is platform three?
9) Have a good trip.
10) How many people are travelling?
11) Would you like to go to Giza?
12) Go straight on. Then turn right.
13) You need to buy a ticket for the train.
14) These are transport jobs.
15) A train master helps people at the station.
16) A railroad engineer drives the train.
17) A schedule tells passengers the times of the trains.

3 Supply the missing letters:
airport – gas station – café / supermarket – library – port / station master – pilot – passengers / mechanic – schedule – railroad engineer / co-pilot – mechanic – ticket agent / flight attendant – engine – fix / station – restaurant – store / museum – railroad – highway / water – sky – airplane / train – boat – ferry / car – taxi – press / truck – frog – present

4 Choose the correct answer:
1) port 2) pilot 3) by
4) railroad engineer 5) Where
6) railroad 7) at 8) station master
9) sky 10) passengers 11) co-pilot
12) station 13) How 14) mechanic
15) airport 16) water 17) by
18)conductor 19)Airplanes 20)Passengers

5 Look at the pictures and write:
1) station 2) airport 3) five o'clock
4) gas station 5) railroad 6) highway 7) sky
8) water 9) one oh five 10) mechanic
11) passengers 12) railroad engineer
13) station master 14) schedule 15) pilot
16) ticket agent 17) flight attendant
18) co-pilot 19) two fifty-five
20) seven forty-five

## Unit (8) Test (2)

1 Match "A" with "B":
1) I would like to go to Luxor, please.
2) Yes, you can. 3) One adult and one child, please. 4) Here you are.

2 Supply the missing letters:
mechanic – railroad – airplane – library

3 Choose the correct answer:
1) gas station 2) ticket agent 3) by
4) schedule 5) airport 6) How
7) flight attendant 8) highway

4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):
1) (✗) 2) (✓) 3) (✗) 4) (✓)

### 5 Put the words in the correct order:
1) I would like to go to Cairo by train.
2) How would you go to Luxor?
3) An airplane stops at an airport.

## Revision on Unit 9

### 1 Match "A" with "B":
1) You have to pick up trash. 2)very big mouth.
3) go to the doctor. I'm not ill. 4) the tallest animal.

- Match "A" with "B":
1) help my mom yesterday.
2) a picture of a monkey today.
3) go to bed early today.
4) a picture of a lizard last week.

- Match "A" with "B":
1) 2000 Egyptian pounds.
2) next to the River Nile.
3) the biggest reptile. 4) food and water.

- Match "A" with "B":
1) 200,000 2) 9,000,000 3) 800 4) 6000

### 2 Put the words in the correct order:
1) I have to do my homework.
2) They run the most quickly of all.
3) A hippo lives on land and water.
4) We have to find out about African animals.
5) The elephant is the biggest land animal.
6) It grows up to three meters tall.
7) The hippo has short legs.
8) Why are hippo dangerous?
9) We keep our country clean.
10) Do we have to recycle plastic?
11) What else do we have to do?
12) We have to do our school project.
13) Weaving is an important tradition in Egypt.14) People weave carpets and cloth.
15) I always try hard.
16) One hundred million people live in Egypt. 17) Which reptile do you like best?

### 3 Supply the missing letters:
elephant - hippo - giraffe /
rhino - trunk - tusk / horn - tongue - mouth /
teeth - nose - lion / water - shower - bath /
walk - drive - light / trash bin - recycle - trash / garden - litter - fly / cry - dry - fry /
hundred - thousand - million

### 4 Choose the correct answer:
1) don't have to 2) have to 3) faster
4) cries 5) went 6) more
7) visited 8) cry 9) tallest
10) had to 11) fly 12) less quickly
13) the least 14) try 15) write
16) have to 17) the biggest 18) have to
19) drew 20) the most quickly 21) dries
22) did 23) best 24) fries 25) fry
26) tries 27) best 28) flies

## Unit (9) Test (3)

### 1 Match "A" with (B):
1) horns on its nose.
2) help mom at home today.
3) the biggest land animal.
4) tidy your bedroom yesterday.

### 2 Supply the missing letters:
carpet – giraffe – hundred – tongue

### 3 Choose the correct answer:
1) more quickly 2) fries 3) wrote
4) have to 5) stronger 6) had to
7) the least quickly 8) go

### 4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):
1) (✓) 2) (×) 3) (×) 4) (✓)

### 5 Put the words in the correct order:
1) An elephant is big and gray.
2)It has a long trunk. 3) I like tiger the best.

### 6 Look at the pictures and write:
tusks – trash (litter) / million – drives

## Revision on Unit 10

### 1 Match "A" with "B":
1) so we went to the beach.
2) so he stayed in bed.
3) because today is a holiday.
4) and a green sweater.
5) because she's a doctor.
6) and doing gymnastics.

- Match "A" with "B":
1) buy some milk. 2) No, I don't.
3) my mom and dad.4) to buy some bread.

- Match "A" with "B":
1) and magazines.
2) because it was Friday.
3) but she doesn't like playing football.
4) so, I ate two sandwiches.

- Match "A" with "B":

1) in an emergency 2) television
3) to music 4) sport 5) by bus 6) to music

**2 Put the words in the correct order:**

1) I like shopping at the supermarket.
2) Yousef and his dad are in a store.
3) I like making cakes.
4) What did you do today?
5) Did she buy any clothes?
6) I hate shopping for shoes.
7) I went shopping with my dad.
8) She enjoys cooking.
9) He prefers eating cake.
10) I love seeing my cousins.
11) We didn't go to school yesterday.
12) This car is expensive.
13) Were they expensive?
14) We pay at the check out.
15) How much is this rice?
16) I owe you eight L.E change.
17) How much does it cost?

**3 Supply the missing letters:**

shopping – supermarket – market / store – clothes store – shoe store / bookstore – bakery – butcher / cheap – expensive – checkout / letter – envelope – stamp / email – address – paper / air – ear – hair / chair – beard – sick / money – frying – storekeeper

**4 Choose the correct answer:**

1) watching 2) and 3) drinking
4) but 5) is 6) so 7) because
8) shopping 9) cheap 10) because
11) listening 12) but 13) traveling 14) so
15) drinking 16) but 17) expensive
18) making 19) and 20) are

## Unit (10) Test (4)

**1 Match "A" with (B):**

1) charge of a school. 2) I went shopping.
3) we are sick. 4) eating ice cream.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**

shopping – stamp – sick – bakery

**3 Choose the correct answer:**

1) traveling 2) expensive 3) so 4) drawing
5) because 6) fifteen 7) and 8) but

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**

1) (✓) 2) (×) 3) (×) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**

1) Yousef and his dad are in a store.
2) What did you do today?
3) I went shopping with my brother.

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**

checkout – bookstore – cheap – market

## Revision on Unit 11

**1 Match "A" with "B":**

1) percussion instrument.
2) wind instrument.
3) amazing show! 4) string instrument.

- Match "A" with "B":

1) "Can you tidy the classroom, please?"
2) "Fares, can you be in our show, please?" 3) "Nesma, can you play the guitar, please?"
4) "Dad, can you sing a song, please?"

**2 Put the words in the correct order:**

1) The musicians are fantastic.
2) It's a lovely song. 3) He can sing very well. 4) What an amazing show!
5) Their instruments are fantastic.
6) An oud is a string instrument.
7) I love celebrating Eid Al-Fitr.
8) Lots of people live in Cairo.
9) Where is Nubia?
10) There are many types of music.
11) Aswan is in the south of Egypt.
12) Let's sing the national anthem.
13) We decorate our home.
14) They're wearing costumes.
15) Cairo is the biggest city.
16) When is Sham El-Nessim?
17) They look very pretty.

**3 Supply the missing letters:**

piano – qanun – drum / violin – flute – guitar / reed pipe – tambourine – bagpipe / cymbals – singer – oud / string – spring – instrument / strong – sprint – costume

**4 Choose the correct answer:**

1) an 2) song 3) instruments 4) ask
5) folk music 6) folktale 7) wearing 8) percussion
9) dance 10) play 11) wearing 12) wind
13) What 14) national 15) string 16) dancer

## Unit (11) Test (5)

**1 Match "A" with (B):**
1) wind instrument.
2) percussion instrument.
3) exciting concert! 4) string instrument.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
string – drum – singer – strong

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) folk music 2) a 3) song 4) ask
5) wind 6) play 7) What 8) folktale

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):**
1) (✗) 2) (✗) 3) (✗) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) What an amazing show!
2) He can sing very well.
3) People played it in ancient Egypt.

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
dancers – concert (band) /
tambourine – singer

## Revision on Unit 12

**1 Match "A" with "B":**
1)He's very kind. 2) that people can guess.
3) you visit websites. 4) video chat.

**- Match "A" with "B":**
1) read websites or watch videos to find out information.
2) type an email, write a project, watch a movie or look at photos.
3) watch a program or a movie.
4) talk to one person and hear what they are saying.
5) see the person you are talking to.

**- Match "A" with "B":**
1) I'm curious about the environment.
2) No, I don't. 3) We're very excited.
4) She's very kind. 5) cell phone.
6) Now, we're tired.

**2 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) People didn't use to have video chats.
2) People used to write postcards.
3) People didn't use to use cell phones.
4) People used to write letters.
5) People didn't use to use telephones.
6) People didn't use to send text messages.
7) I never write letters.
8) Do you often send postcards?
9) Do you like having video chats?
10) Say that again. 11) Yes, so do I now.
12) What does online safety mean?
13) He learned about online safety.
14) Who is Reem messaging?
15) Change your password on different websites.
16) You are online when you visit sites.
17) Don't share information online.

**3 Supply the missing letters:**
phone call – text message – video call / picture message – telephone – cell phone / letter – postcard – email / magazine – newspaper – website / excited – tired – bored / kind – worried – angry / thumb – wrist – lamb / write – knot – knit

**4 Choose the correct answer:**
1) write 2) tired 3) have a video chat
4) blind 5) text message 6) kind
7) didn't 8) angry 9) Ask
10) loud 11) password 12) Don't share
13) typewriters 14) Use 15) phone call
16) used 17) curious 18) use
19) worried 20)didn't use to 21)Don't send
22) didn't use to 23) didn't use to
24) Change 25) didn't use to

## Unit (12) Test (6)

**1 Match "A" with (B):**
1) video chat. 2) He's angry.
3) phone call. 4) I'm worried about him.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
tired – telephone – letter – knit

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) phone calls 2) use 3) used 4) kind
5) quiet 6) didn't 7) blind 8) write

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):**
1) (✓) 2) (✗) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) Why did you write letters?
2) I like sending picture messages.
3) We can make a phone call.

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
email – angry / newspaper – postcard

## Part 3 Revision Tests

### Revision Test (1)

**1 Match "A" with (B):**
1) I would like to go to Luxor.
2) go to Port Said. 3) By car. 4) by boat.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
drum – present – hundred – desert

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) so 2) port 3) had to 4) national 5) wool
6) less quickly 7) folk tale 8) Don't send

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (✓) 3) (✓) 4) (×)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) This is a lovely performance.
2) Who is asking questions?
3) An airplane stops at an airport.

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
oasis – three oh five / qanun – butcher's

### Revision Test (2)

**1 Match "A" with (B):**
1) tidy your room today.
2) get up early on the weekend.
3) clean the garden yesterday.
4) You have to pick up trash.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
farm – hippo – tambourine – ferry

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) chickens 2) nine 3) dries
4) by 5) the tallest 6) percussion
7) What 8) worried

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (✓) 2) (×) 3) (×) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) An email can be formal or informal.
2) She is playing the piano.
3) How would you go to Luxor?

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
checkout – railroad engineer / lake – email

### Revision Test (3)

**1 Match "A" with (B):**
1) to buy some meat.
2) because it was Friday.
3) movies. 4) No, I don't.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
library – telephone – thousand – sheep

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) north 2) don't have to 3) is
4) railroad engineer 5) the least
6) write 7) do 8) dance

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (×) 2) (✓) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) My family isn't big.
2) A letter is usually formal.
3) What an amazing show!

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
seven forty-five – shoe store /
station master – sunny

### Revision Test (4)

**1 Match "A" with (B):**
1) You have to pick up trash.
2) the biggest reptile.
3) 3000 Egyptian pounds. 4) very big mouth.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
windy – envelope – trunk – postcard

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) fish 2) because 3) at 4) are
5) have to 6) blind 7) visited 8) string

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (×):**
1) (✓) 2) (✓) 3) (✓) 4) (×)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) An email can be formal or informal.
2) The children are singing the national anthem.
3) We wear new clothes on Eid Al-Fitr.

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
phone call – snowing / schedule – principal

## Revision Test (5)

**1 Match "A" with (B):**
1) It's four forty. 2) a station.
3) water. 4) checks the engines.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
newspaper – stamp – million – cold

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) passengers 2) ask 3) meat 4) drew
5) didn't 6) Why 7) more 8) song

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):**
1) (✗) 2) (✗) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) What did she learn about?
2) Change your password on different websites.
3) Talk to your parents about going online.

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
gas station – singer / rainy – cell phone

## Revision Test (6)

**1 Match "A" with (B):**
1) It's windy. 2) to look after the environment.
3) deserts in Egypt. 4) To keep fit.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
letter – trash – mountain – tired

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) cold 2) cheap 3) Passengers 4) an
5) don't have to 6) loud 7) write 8) How

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):**
1) (✗) 2) (✗) 3) (✗) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) People wrote letters in the past.
2) Why do you think it's important?
3) Who is asking questions?

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
violin – River / sky – kind

## Revision Test (7)

**1 Match "A" with (B):**
1) in an emergency. 2) wind instrument.
3) my mom and dad. 4) string instrument.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
airport – angry – tongue – supermarket

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) mechanic 2) wearing 3) lake
4) and 5) typewriters 6) railroad
7) making 8) tired

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):**
1) (✗) 2) (✗) 3) (✗) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) People played it in ancient Egypt.
2) She is playing the piano.
3) What instrument do you like best?

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
tired – temple / reed pipe – expensive

## Revision Test (8)

**1 Match "A" with (B):**
1) amazing show! 2) He's very kind.
3) that people can guess.
4) percussion instrument.

**2 Supply the missing letters:**
horn – pilot – bakery – excited

**3 Choose the correct answer:**
1) Airplanes 2) watching
3) railroad engineer 4) What 5) used
6) play 7) but 8) angry

**4 Read and mark (✓) or (✗):**
1) (✗) 2) (✗) 3) (✓) 4) (✓)

**5 Put the words in the correct order:**
1) The children are singing the national anthem.
2) I went shopping with my brother.
3) How would you go to Luxor?

**6 Look at the pictures and write:**
furniture – sick / video chat – piano